8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 1 of 282 - Page ID # 23065

1 IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE DISTRICT OF NEBRASKA 2 3 Case No. 8:10CV187 EXMARK MANUFACTURING CO., ) INC., ) 4 ) Plaintiff, ) 5 vs. 6 BRIGGS & STRATTON POWER 7 PRODUCTS GROUP, LLC, Omaha, Nebraska ) 8 Defendant. September 15, 2015 ) 9 10 11 12 VOLUME VI TRANSCRIPT OF TRIAL PROCEEDINGS 13 BEFORE THE HONORABLE JOSEPH F. BATAILLON UNITED STATES SENIOR DISTRICT JUDGE, AND A JURY 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 COURT REPORTER: Ms. Susan M. DeVetter, RDR, CRR Official Court Reporter 22 Hruska Courthouse, Suite 3130 111 South 18th Plaza 23 Omaha, Nebraska 68102-1322 (402) 661-7309 24 25 Proceedings recorded by mechanical stenography, transcript produced with computer.

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 2 of 282 - Page ID # 23066

1 2 A P P E A R A N C E S 3 Mr. J. Derek Vandenburgh Mr. Joseph W. Winkels 4 CARLSON, CASPERS, VANDENBURGH & LINDQUIST, P.A., 5 225 South Sixth Street, Suite 4200 Minneapolis, MN 55402, For the Plaintiff; 6 7 8 Mr. Matthew M. Wolf Mr. Marc A. Cohn 9 Ms. Amy L. DeWitt ARNOLD & PORTER LLP 10 555 Twelfth Street, NW Washington DC 20004 11 Mr. John P. Passarelli 12 KUTAK ROCK, LLP The Omaha Building 1650 Farnam Street 13 Omaha, NE 68102-2186, For the Defendant. 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 3 of 282 - Page ID # 23067

1 (At 8:54 a.m. on September 15, 2015; with counsel and the 2 parties' representatives present; WITHOUT the jury:) THE COURT: Please be seated. 3 I have received the designations that you sent -- the --4 5 everyone sent last night. I do not have a copy of Dave Converse's deposition. 6 7 MS. DEWITT: Well, Your Honor, I don't think there's any objections to those designations. I probably 8 9 shouldn't have included them. I don't think plaintiffs have 10 objected to any of Mr. Converse's designations, so it's really 11 we're just going to be focusing on the objections for 12 Mr. Benson. THE COURT: Okay. Very good. So let's go through 13 14 the list that I have here of objections. 15 And we'll start with Benson's deposition. 16 Now, if I miss one of these, somebody has to tell me 17 because some of the printing included the yellow highlighting 18 and some of it didn't and so I'm not sure we got them all. 19 So the first objection that I see is on page 32 of 20 Exhibit B. That I assume is the first deposition. Is that 21 correct? July 12th, 2011. 22 MS. DEWITT: Your Honor, I actually -- I think 23 they've also -- we've also agreed on all of the designations 24 for Exhibit B. It's Exhibit C --25 THE COURT: Okay. So --

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 4 of 282 - Page ID # 23068

1	MS. DEWITT: which is going to be Mr. Benson's
2	October 2011 deposition that we should probably look at first.
3	THE COURT: All right. That's fine.
4	MS. DEWITT: And I think the first one is
5	actually the first one objected to is on page 57, beginning
6	with line 7.
7	THE COURT: Thanks. Okay. And what's the objection?
8	Who's doing Okay, go ahead, Mr. Winkels.
9	MR. WINKELS: Subject to our motion in limine on
10	laches, Your Honor. Again, these are going to delay and
11	Exmark's state of mind.
12	THE COURT: Oh, I see. Okay. All right.
13	MS. DEWITT: Your Honor, if I may?
14	THE COURT: Sure.
15	MS. DEWITT: It's actually showing that Briggs was
16	open and not hiding its baffles at all if it knew in 2000 and
17	2001 of a brochure with the Ferris baffle on it.
18	THE COURT: Okay. Just a second.
19	All right. So Mr. Winkels, I mean, the question is, is
20	how far we let this go. The issue of brochures is out and in
21	front. So what difference does it make whether a brochure was
22	known to Exmark this early?
23	MR. WINKELS: It's really the question at line 7,
24	Your Honor: Does Exmark assert that Ferris was infringing the
25	patent '863 in 2003?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 5 of 282 - Page ID # 23069

1	I mean that is not relevant to
2	THE COURT: Oh, that's the problem.
3	MR. WINKELS: Yeah, that's the problem.
4	MS. DEWITT: But the answer is relevant.
5	THE COURT: Well, that may be.
6	MR. WINKELS: And to your point, Your Honor, this
7	information is coming in through other sources, so asking the
8	question is what we have the problem with.
9	THE COURT: Just a second.
10	MS. DEWITT: Your Honor, we could
11	THE COURT: Just a second.
12	MS. DEWITT: Oop, sorry.
13	THE COURT: So what was your compromise going to be,
14	Ms. DeWitt?
15	MS. DEWITT: Remove the question.
16	THE COURT: Oh, I see.
17	MS. DEWITT: It's a little unorthodox but we think it
18	would
19	THE COURT: Just a second.
20	You know, I'm going to overrule the objection. I just
21	I think that we've gotten enough into brochures that it's
22	that it's and the information concerning brochure is
23	relevant. So I'm going to overrule the objection.
24	What's the next objection?
25	MS. DEWITT: Your Honor, if you go to page 78 of the

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 6 of 282 - Page ID # 23070

1	same transcript, beginning in line 10.
2	THE COURT: Oh, here they are. Okay. 78, beginning
3	at line 10.
4	MS. DEWITT: And it's really down to 79:6.
5	THE COURT: Correct. So I'm sustaining that
6	objection. All right. What's the next one?
7	MS. DEWITT: On page 114, Your Honor oops, I'm
8	sorry. I'm sorry. 121. I apologize.
9	THE COURT: And I've already ruled on 108.
10	MS. DEWITT: Yes.
11	THE COURT: Okay.
12	MS. DEWITT: And I should have yes, they agreed to
13	remove those objections.
14	THE COURT: So now you're at 121?
15	MS. DEWITT: 121.
16	THE COURT: And that's sustained as well.
17	I'm sorry, I've seen these but I keep getting them in new
18	formats and then I keep forgetting to bring out the old work
19	that I did, so I'm double-billing; I hope nobody minds.
20	All right. And that objection goes through page 122,
21	line 21, correct?
22	MS. DEWITT: Yes, Your Honor.
23	THE COURT: Okay. All right. So the next is 125?
24	MS. DEWITT: Yes. And again, this is you know,
25	Ferris is out there, they're at trade shows, Ferris is at trade

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 7 of 282 - Page ID # 23071

```
1
      shows.
 2
                THE COURT: Right. And Mr. Winkels? Same objection?
                MR. WINKELS: Yes, Your Honor.
 3
                THE COURT: Overruled. We've talked about trade
 4
 5
      shows and people going to trade shows and the question is
 6
      whether it's open and obvious and the fact that you're sending
 7
      people to trade shows shows that that's what people do, so I'm
      not so concerned about it.
 8
 9
           All right. Next.
10
                MS. DEWITT: Next, Your Honor, is the testimony
11
      beginning on page 141, line 18.
12
                THE COURT: Okay. And the Exhibit 147 is what?
13
                MS. DEWITT: It is -- it's a summary of a -- of a
14
      GIE trade show where they're looking at the competitors'
15
      products.
16
                THE COURT: Okay.
17
                MS. DEWITT: And we think that this is directly
18
      relevant because we heard Mr. Stinson and Mr. Dorn talk about,
19
      you know, how important it is, they wouldn't condone anyone
20
      using the technology, but they knew that there were competitors
21
      out there potentially infringing the products.
22
                THE COURT: So this goes -- this goes to the -- to
23
      the run-on of objections after 142, line 23, correct?
24
                MS. DEWITT: It does -- yes. So it starts again
25
      142:23 and this is the same -- 148 is the same type of meeting
```

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 8 of 282 - Page ID # 23072

1	summary minutes, talking about, you know, we heard Mr. Dorn
2	say it bothers us to compete with a competitor using our
3	technology that we identified. Well, they knew about it in
4	these memos and it didn't seem to bother them because they
5	didn't sue them.
6	THE COURT: They didn't sue them because it doesn't
7	cost \$10 million to sue it costs \$10 million to sue
8	somebody, okay?
9	The average cost of a patent litigation through trial
10	is \$5.9 million, okay? Between the two of you and the times
11	that have gone to re-patent consideration, it's probably
12	\$10 million apiece, okay? I wouldn't be surprised. And if
13	you want the other side to be able to recover their attorneys'
14	fees, then I then you can do this, but I don't think that's
15	appropriate under the circumstances and that's not why I'm not
16	allowing it.
17	I don't think the Supreme Court is going to has
18	Supreme Court's already ruled that laches doesn't really apply.
19	Whether the Fed. Circuit does or not is another matter.
20	So you've already kind of opened the door on that
21	Exmark knew what was going on. Your shadow jury has given you
22	appropriate information. And you've you've kicked open the
23	door.
24	But I'm not going to let you kick it open very much more
25	and that's kind of where I'm going, okay?

1 Yes, Mr. Wolf. 2 MR. WOLF: Your Honor, I just want to be clear. We understand and -- and my -- my understanding of what's happened 3 here is you're denying our motion for reconsideration except to 4 the extent that you're overruling certain specific objections. 5 THE COURT: Correct. 6 7 MR. WOLF: And just so we're clear, just to put a 8 caveat on what Ms. DeWitt just said, we want to make clear that 9 we are drawing a distinction between not suing on the one hand, 10 and we obviously respectfully disagree, but then there's a 11 second issue of not even saying anything by letter or phone 12 call or whatever. 13 THE COURT: And that's -- that's the same thing. 14 MR. WOLF: Well, we respectfully -- I just want to 15 make clear for the record that we -- we see them as two 16 separate issues. And we're -- and there is a sword and shield 17 component to this. And even Ms. Bennis on the stand yesterday 18 invited the jury to go beyond 5 percent. She on two occasions 19 suggested that 5 percent might not be enough because you heard 20 how Exmark wouldn't tolerate infringement, they wouldn't accept 21 it, they would never voluntarily license. 22 So we're now not only -- we're now not only hearing 23 counterfactual things about what they would do or not do, we're actually having the expert complicit in that, inviting a 24 25 runaway jury in that regard.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 10 of 282 - Page ID # 23074

1	THE COURT: Well, Mr. Stinson already agreed during
2	his cross-examination that they would accept 5 percent, okay?
3	I don't think anybody's I I think the real question
4	is, is what would you accept for your suspension technology?
5	Okay? Nobody's asked that question. And I suspect 5 percent
6	wouldn't be enough because that's your whole marketing plan.
7	So, you know, I you guys get to litigate what you get
8	to litigate. You don't get to litigate this.
9	MR. WOLF: I'm sorry, I just wanted to make sure
10	THE COURT: So any rate, let's go back to page 142
11	and page 141. Let me look at this again.
12	And this is a memo memo that somebody wrote after the
13	2002 or or 2001 or 2000 trade show, correct?
14	MS. DEWITT: Yes, Your Honor.
15	THE COURT: This one's problematic.
16	But the document doesn't specifically talk about the front
17	baffle, correct, Mr. Winkels?
18	MS. DEWITT: It doesn't. It's talked
19	MR. WOLF: He asked
20	MS. DEWITT: Oh, I'm sorry.
21	MR. WINKELS: I'm wondering, what is Exhibit 147?
22	THE COURT: It's 148.
23	MR. WINKELS: Oh, 148.
24	THE COURT: Yeah, it starts with 147 and then goes to
25	148.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 11 of 282 - Page ID # 23075

1 MR. WINKELS: That's -- is this the -- the notes from 2 the GIE show that lists --THE COURT: Correct. 3 MS. DEWITT: We didn't -- I'm not sure where 4 Your Honor is. We didn't designate 147. 5 MR. WOLF: Is there a page 147? 6 7 MS. DEWITT: Page 147. THE COURT: Well, if you look at page 141, it refers 8 9 to an Exhibit 147. 10 MS. DEWITT: Oh, an exhibit, yes. 11 THE COURT: And then in page 142, it refers to an 12 Exhibit 148. And then as it proceeds it refers to both. So 13 apparently both have to do with some kind of memo that occurred 14 at the -- at the trade show and how they were comparing the two 15 mowers during the trade show. And it seems to me that there's 16 been some testimony about that already. 17 So Mr. Winkels. 18 MR. WINKELS: Your Honor, if I'm -- if I'm correct, 19 and sounds like I am, that these are notes from a GIE show --20 THE COURT: Correct. 21 MR. WINKELS: -- and these are notes that Mr. Busboom 22 had in front of him but the Court precluded them from actually 23 showing the document to the jury and getting into some of the 24 details on that document. I think that's what this testimony 25 goes to.

1015

1	THE COURT: Well, he he was here to testify so his
2	notes generally aren't admissible. And these this this
3	testimony refers to his notes, apparently. So the question is
4	whether the witness had a discussion about these notes at some
5	time and considered them.
6	Am I correct, Ms. DeWitt?
7	MS. DEWITT: Yes, Your Honor, that's what we believe.
8	With Mr. Benson, he's talking about what was going on at these
9	trade shows. They were riding each other's mowers and
10	comparing the mowers.
11	THE COURT: But these are Busboom's notes,
12	apparently.
13	MR. WINKELS: I don't think they're Mr. Busboom's
14	notes.
15	Your Honor, I think if you look at 144, line 16, this kind
16	of gets to the point that they're trying to get at here. And
17	again, it's going to what Exmark did and Exmark's state of mind
18	and that it was that it did not sue and that it did not
19	write a letter. Again, Exmark's state of mind here does is
20	not relevant to their state of mind for willfulness and
21	certainly not relevant to damages.
22	THE COURT: All right. All right, well
23	MS. DEWITT: Your Honor, I don't think any of this
24	testimony refers to Exmark's state it's simply talking about
25	riding a Ferris lawn mower in 2001.

1	THE COURT: But he he was I'm not sure. Was
2	Mr. Benson present for this or was this just Mr. Busboom with
3	Mr. Busboom's in other words, somebody found the document
4	and will now you're asking Mr. Benson about the document. We
5	don't know the answer to that, do we?
6	MS. DEWITT: We know Mr. Benson was in charge of
7	monitoring competitive products. And we we can pull the
8	document up just to see if Mr. Benson was sent the memo on 147
9	if you'd allow us, Your Honor.
10	THE COURT: Well, I'm looking at the deposition. It
11	doesn't appear that Mr. Benson was even there. It appears that
12	you're getting him to talk about a document and his
13	MS. DEWITT: He was the 30(b)(6) witness on this
14	topic.
15	THE COURT: Okay. All right. All right. Well, I'm
16	sustaining the objection. Their present their state of
17	mind, the plaintiff's state of mind, is not at issue, and we've
18	already gotten into this so I don't need to be I don't think
19	that we need to open the door any further.
20	MS. DEWITT: Okay.
21	THE COURT: All right. What's the next?
22	MS. DEWITT: Your Honor, page 154 and 158 are kind of
23	the same area of testimony.
24	THE COURT: Okay.
25	MS. DEWITT: And we would say we don't need to look

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 14 of 282 - Page ID # 23078

1 at -- we don't need to pull the document up. We can just 2 qet --THE COURT: No, I understand. So I'm sustaining both 3 of those objections. 4 All right. So what's the next one? 5 6 MS. DEWITT: I don't think there's any more for that 7 deposition. We have one more deposition of Mr. Benson --8 THE COURT: All right. 9 MS. DEWITT: -- from February 2015. 10 THE COURT: And you start with? 11 MS. DEWITT: And we start with, I have been informed 12 that plaintiffs object to page 26 --13 THE COURT: All right. 14 MS. DEWITT: -- lines 10 through 25. 15 THE COURT: Twenty-six? 16 MS. DEWITT: Yeah, they didn't include it but now 17 they're objecting to it. 18 MR. WINKELS: Your Honor, we did have it included in 19 our originals and -- it wasn't included in the version you got 20 last night but it was in our originals. 21 MS. DEWITT: So it wasn't included in what you filed? 22 THE COURT: So what -- so what are you objecting to, 23 Mr. Winkels? 24 MR. WINKELS: Same objection on -- it relates on 25 motion in limine on laches and again it goes to Exmark's state

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 15 of 282 - Page ID # 23079

1 of mind. 2 THE COURT: Goes to what page and line number? MR. WINKELS: I'm sorry, Your Honor. Line 26 -- I'm 3 sorry, page 26, lines 10 to 25. 4 THE COURT: Thank you. And -- so Ms. DeWitt, why is 5 this relevant, what Deere does? 6 7 MS. DEWITT: Well, Deere had a non-infringing baffle or at the time it had a baffle alternative design on the market 8 9 and it was succeeding in the market, competing against Exmark 10 without the patented flow control baffle. 11 MR. WINKELS: And, Your Honor, again, this goes --12 the question on line 21 to 22 is: Does it -- meaning Exmark --13 continue to suspect that Deere infringed? 14 Again, it goes directly to Exmark's state of mind. 15 THE COURT: Okay. Well, I'm going to sustain the 16 objection from 26:14 through 25 but not with respect to 10 17 through 13. 10 through 13 is exactly what Ms. DeWitt says and 18 that is that there are products with a front flow baffle that 19 compete against the defendant -- or compete against the 20 plaintiff, and so any sales figures relating to them 21 theoretically would be relevant to the value of the front flow 22 control baffle. 23 All right. And the next. 24 MS. DEWITT: Yes, Your Honor. Well, on the next, 25 page 27 to 28, I think given that ruling --

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 16 of 282 - Page ID # 23080

```
1019
```

1	
1	THE COURT: Go ahead.
2	MS. DEWITT: Twenty-seven, line 18.
3	THE COURT: Twenty-seven. Are we going backwards?
4	MS. DEWITT: We were on page 26, Your Honor. Now I'm
5	just going to page 27.
6	THE COURT: Oh, thank you very much.
7	MS. DEWITT: Um-hum.
8	THE COURT: I don't see an objection here. Where is
9	it?
10	MS. DEWITT: Oh, I'm sorry.
11	MR. WINKELS: Yeah, I don't see an objection.
12	MS. DEWITT: I'm sorry. You're right.
13	MR. WINKELS: We have a conditional designation.
14	THE COURT: So let's go to the next objection.
15	MS. DEWITT: Yes. Page begins on 45, line 12
16	through 15 and bleeds into pages 46 and 47.
17	THE COURT: Yeah, that's sustained. I've seen this
18	before. Let me look at 47.
19	MS. DEWITT: And finally, Your Honor
20	THE COURT: Just a second.
21	MS. DEWITT: Oop.
22	THE COURT: Yeah, that's sustained, the whole thing.
23	All right. Next?
24	MS. DEWITT: The last set will begin on page 53,
25	line 7. But actually I'm going to point you we're going to

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 17 of 282 - Page ID # 23081

1 remove -- we're going to take some of these designations away. 2 It should start page 53, line 23. THE COURT: Correct. Okay. And that's sustained as 3 well. 4 Any -- and then the next is 56:23. Does that -- that's a 5 follow-on to the previous, correct? 6 7 MS. DEWITT: Yes, Your Honor. THE COURT: And that's sustained as well. 8 9 And any additional? Oh, here we go, page 66. 10 MS. DEWITT: Yes, Your Honor. 11 THE COURT: Line 19. 12 MR. WINKELS: Your Honor, this appears to be a 13 follow-on from the prior testimony. 14 THE COURT: Just a second. Isn't the issue with 15 respect to Scag in play or not, Mr. Winkels? 16 MR. WINKELS: Certainly some of the issues with 17 respect to Scag have been in play in that there was a Scag 18 lawsuit and the parties settled, but certainly, Your Honor, 19 we've been precluded from getting into any of the details of 20 Scag and obviously if this information comes in, we may need to 21 get into the details of the Scag case. 22 THE COURT: Let me look at this a little bit more. 23 Yeah, this is sustained. 24 Okay. Next. 25 MS. DEWITT: The next, beginning on -- you're still

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 18 of 282 - Page ID # 23082

on page 70, is another GIE summary, so I'm going to anticipate 1 2 that you're going to be --THE COURT: I don't see page 70. Is it page 75? 3 MS. DEWITT: Yes, that's the actual --4 5 THE COURT: The objection -- I show the objection starts at page 75, line 12. Is that correct? Or does it start 6 7 earlier than that? 8 MR. WINKELS: I'm not following where you are. 9 MS. DEWITT: I think, Your Honor, after the portion 10 of testimony on Scaq, where -- you were on pages 69 and 70, 11 right? 12 THE COURT: No, this objection that I show runs from 13 page 66 through page 69, line 7. And then I don't show an 14 objection thereafter on this copy of the deposition. 15 MS. DEWITT: We might have withdrawn some of those 16 based on an earlier ruling of Your Honor. 17 THE COURT: Okay. 18 MS. DEWITT: If I can just point you to the next 19 Q and A, and that was on page 70. 20 THE COURT: Okay. What line? 21 MS. DEWITT: Beginning with line 15. 22 THE COURT: All right. And then continuing through? 23 MS. DEWITT: 71 through 4, but I'll -- if I can maybe 24 short-circuit this, this is another GIE summary. 25 THE COURT: All right. Sustained.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 19 of 282 - Page ID # 23083

```
1
           And then the next designation?
2
                MS. DEWITT: I think the last one we have is on
 3
      page 77.
                THE COURT: Okay.
 4
                MS. DEWITT: Beginning with line 3.
 5
 6
                THE COURT: So just to be clear, I have a designation
 7
      objected to on page 75, line 12 that runs through 77, line 2.
      Is that --
 8
 9
                MS. DEWITT: We withdrew the designation based on
10
      Your Honor's earlier order on a motion in limine.
11
                THE COURT: Thank you. So the next designation then
12
      begins at page 77, line 3?
                MS. DEWITT: Line 3 through 7.
13
14
                THE COURT: I'm going to sustain this objection as
15
      well.
16
           All right. Next.
                MS. DEWITT: That's it, Your Honor.
17
18
                THE COURT: Okay. Anything else, Mr. Winkels?
19
                MR. WINKELS: Your Honor, could we just ask that we
20
      get a transcript of the clips that's going to be played
21
      before --
22
                MS. DEWITT: Absolutely.
23
                THE COURT: Okay. Mr. Wolf.
24
                MR. WOLF: Your Honor, when Mr. Wenzel concludes,
25
      that's when by parties' agreement plaintiff's case closes.
```

1	THE COURT: Correct.
2	MR. WOLF: How would Your Honor mechanically like to
3	handle the directed verdict issues that we don't waive?
4	THE COURT: What's your how much longer do you
5	think you have with Mr. Wenzel? My guess is he's going to run
6	till the break and then if he runs to the break between direct
7	and cross-examination that we could or do you technically
8	rest at the end yeah, you rest at the end of his
9	cross-examination, right?
10	MR. WOLF: Right.
11	THE COURT: So I think we'll be at a break point
12	then.
13	MR. WOLF: Okay. Just in terms of just how
14	feverishly people should be writing. What we would propose is
15	that we orally state our grounds at that time and then we can
16	submit something in writing this evening?
17	THE COURT: That's fine.
18	MR. WOLF: Okay. So we will we will do that then,
19	Your Honor.
20	THE COURT: Is that acceptable to you,
21	Mr. Vandenburgh?
22	MR. VANDENBURGH: Yes, Your Honor.
23	THE COURT: Okay.
24	MR. WOLF: Thank you.
25	THE COURT: Anything else?

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 21 of 282 - Page ID # 23085

1	
1	I'm sorry we miscommunicated on the starting time. That's
2	my fault. I didn't tell my courtroom deputy that she was
3	supposed to be here at 8:30 as opposed to what I had previously
4	told her, which was nine o'clock, and thankfully she came early
5	as she always does, but not early enough.
6	MR. WOLF: No problem.
7	THE COURT: Anything else, Mr. Wolf?
8	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor, just we are we've
9	talked about time. If Your Honor wants an update where we are
10	on timing?
11	THE COURT: Sure.
12	MR. WOLF: I suspect that we'll be done roughly the
13	first break this morning on direct. Counsel's indicated that
14	they have a substantial amount of time with Mr. Wenzel. My
15	guess is that he will be done some time after lunch.
16	We have about an hour direct with maybe a little less
17	with our expert, Mr. Del Ponte. So I suspect by the end of the
18	day we will be roughly done with Mr. Del Ponte. We have two
19	short witnesses, each 30 minutes to 45 minutes, and then we
20	have our damages expert.
21	THE COURT: For Wednesday.
22	MR. WOLF: For Wednesday. So I'm still optimistic
23	maybe we'll bleed a little into Thursday morning, depending on
24	how things go, but that shouldn't preclude us from doing
25	closings on Thursday even if we have 20 minutes of testimony on

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 22 of 282 - Page ID # 23086

1 Thursday morning. 2 THE COURT: Okay. MR. WOLF: Unless Your Honor disagreed. 3 THE COURT: And do you anticipate any rebuttal 4 5 testimony, Mr. Vandenburgh? 6 MR. VANDENBURGH: I can't say at this point, 7 Your Honor, but not yet. THE COURT: Okay. Well, I've -- we've canceled --8 9 I think we've canceled about six hearings already for 10 Thursday morning and we have another five or six that we 11 have to cancel for Thursday afternoon if you're going into 12 Thursday afternoon. 13 MR. WOLF: We'll do everything we can to finish 14 Wednesday. 15 THE COURT: So -- and -- and I don't begrudge you 16 the time, I just need to have a heads-up so that I can give the 17 lawyers and the parties sufficient notice that we're cancelling 18 hearings. 19 MR. WOLF: And what we're doing, Your Honor, and just 20 to be -- for the two nonexperts tomorrow, we're keeping their 21 testimony very limited, because they're only adding certain 22 things. We will be -- both for time reasons and because of 23 that, we will be zealously objecting to beyond the scope issues 24 just to give Your Honor a heads-up. 25 THE COURT: Well, you know, this is a serious case

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 23 of 282 - Page ID # 23087

```
1
      and I want to give it the time that's necessary. It's just a
 2
      scheduling issue. So just give me a heads-up so that I can,
      out of courtesy to the other lawyers, let them know that we're
 3
      going along.
 4
           Anything else, Mr. Wolf?
 5
                MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
 6
 7
                THE COURT: All right. Let's just take five and then
 8
      we'll bring the jury in.
 9
            (Recess taken at 9:20 a.m.)
10
            (At 9:29 a.m.; with counsel and the parties'
11
      representatives present; WITHOUT the jury:)
12
                  PHILIP WENZEL RESUMED THE WITNESS STAND
13
                THE COURT: Please be seated.
14
           We're outside the presence of the jury. We -- the jury's
15
      just given us another two questions, but really one question.
16
      And I'm not sure exactly how to answer that question or if we
17
      even need to.
18
           So you ponder on the question.
19
                MR. WOLF: Yeah, this is a tricky one, Your Honor.
                                                                     Ι
20
      mean, the answer -- just so we all know, the answer's yes,
21
      there were discussions, but I don't know what Rule 408 allows
22
      us to get into and what --
23
                THE COURT: I think that -- I think that the nature
24
      of this matter is, is that the parties have been unable to
25
      resolve their differences. And -- and that's what their job --
```

1	
1	what the jury's job is, is to resolve their differences. How
2	we answer it is really kind of the trick.
3	But I think that when we do the closing instructions, we
4	might just say the parties just a sentence that the parties
5	have been unable to resolve their differences and it's your job
6	to do that.
7	And I think we've effectively done that in the jury
8	instruction already.
9	MR. WOLF: Yeah, I would be
10	THE COURT: We've got them involved so much in the
11	process that now they're thinking through the issues.
12	MR. WOLF: Correct. Your Honor, I would be I
13	would be hesitant not to address this question in one way or
14	another and but instructions may well be the right way to go
15	but I don't want it to I don't want the jury to go back in
16	the room thinking that we refused to talk to them.
17	THE COURT: Or vice versa.
18	MR. WOLF: Or vice versa, right, Your Honor.
19	THE COURT: I agree. So I think what we'll do when
20	the jury comes out is to I think I would prefer to end this
21	witness's testimony and then when we finish that I'll
22	I'll I'll talk to them about the next instruction that we've
23	agreed upon, cautionary instruction that we've agreed upon
24	having to do with different evidentiary exhibits.
25	MR. WOLF: Okay.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 25 of 282 - Page ID # 23089

1	THE COURT: And then my preference would be to wait
2	on this negotiation until the end of trial, unless either of
3	you has a preference otherwise.
4	So Mr. Wolf, you're standing up.
5	MR. WOLF: Yeah, I would prefer that we not wait to
6	the end of trial if you're going to give an instruction because
7	someone is sitting in that jury box expecting me to ask this
8	question of Mr. Wenzel.
9	THE COURT: Okay.
10	MR. WOLF: And out of respect for Rule 408, I've not
11	asked such questions.
12	THE COURT: All right. Mr. Vandenburgh.
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, this one cuts both ways
14	and of course we've rested our case so we can't put up a
15	witness to talk about it. I think we should just wait until
16	until the jury instructions.
17	THE COURT: The difficulty is, is that there's only
18	one person and not the whole person and not the whole jury
19	asked the question. And I don't know whether they discussed
20	it or not. This question process is individual to each juror.
21	I really don't have a preference either way of talking
22	about negotiations or I mean talking about the process,
23	but I don't want to read something without both sides agreeing
24	to it and I haven't drafted anything yet.
25	MR. WOLF: Okay.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 26 of 282 - Page ID # 23090

1	THE COURT: So I think we'll wait until this witness
2	is finished at the next break and then maybe I'll have
3	something and we can all agree on what to say.
4	MR. WOLF: Very good, Your Honor. Thank you.
5	THE COURT: All right. You may get the jury.
6	(Jury in at 9:32 a.m.)
7	THE COURT: Please be seated, ladies and gentlemen.
8	Mr. Wenzel, you're still under oath, sir.
9	You may continue your examination, Mr. Wolf.
10	MR. WOLF: Thank you, Your Honor.
11	DIRECT EXAMINATION CONTINUED
12	BY MR. WOLF:
13	Q. Good morning, Mr. Wenzel.
14	A. Good morning.
15	Q. Thank you for the demonstration yesterday. I want to just
16	ask you a few questions about the demand in this case for
17	royalties related to that demonstration.
18	Is it your understanding, sitting here in court, that
19	Ms. Bennis's damages model asks for 5 percent of of the
20	revenue for that entire mower you were driving around
21	yesterday?
22	A. I understand that.
23	Q. And all the technology we that was under the hood when
24	you popped up the hood, that Caterpillar engine, that Exmark is
25	asking for 5 percent of the revenue you derived from that?

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 27 of 282 - Page ID # 23091

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

A. Yes.
Q. What about all the things that contribute to the speed:
the wheels, tires?
A. Hydraulic systems, drive systems, yes.
Q. What about all the things that had to do with comfort:
the suspension, the seat, et cetera?
A. It's all included.
Q. So I want to make sure that we all understand the
distinction in this case, because I think it's important,
between the profits and revenue.
MR. WOLF: Counsel, will you turn on this ELMO? I'll
try to do this zoom out a little bit.
BY MR. WOLF:
Q. Is there a fair round number that represents to you
roughly what Ferris gets when it sells a typical mower?
A. What our take-home pay is, so to speak?
Q. No, let's start with revenue.
A. Okay.
Q. Is there a number that roughly I'm trying to deal with
round numbers so we can do the math easy. Is \$5,000 roughly
what you get from your dealer/distributor?
A. Yeah, that's a pretty good average, I think they 5,000,
5500.
Q. Okay. Well, just for simple sake let's stick with 5,000.
A. Okay.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 28 of 282 - Page ID # 23092

1	Q. So revenue, \$5,000. And again, I think you said
2	yesterday, but this is you sell this to a dealer or
3	distributor and they in turn sell it to a customer. Is that
4	the way it works?
5	A. That's correct.
6	Q. Now, what is the in percentage terms, your take-home
7	profit? What do you after you pay your bills, you pay the
8	taxes, you pay the warranty, the commission, everything else,
9	the you pay Caterpillar, what is your profit margin,
10	take-home?
11	A. Our take-home would be in the range of 5 to 7 percent.
12	Q. So let's to be fair to Exmark, let's take the higher of
13	those numbers. Is it is it accurate that \$350 is roughly
14	your take-home profit on your average mower?
15	A. Yeah, I would say on average.
16	Q. Now, you were here when Ms. Bennis testified; is that
17	right?
18	A. I was.
19	Q. On that same average mower, what did she say that the
20	appropriate royalty was, the hypothetical negotiation royalty?
21	A. 5 percent, I believe.
22	Q. So after you get your \$350 in profit, if you immediately
23	had to turn around and give a royalty of \$250 to Exmark, how
24	much profit would that leave you per mower?
25	A. Hundred dollars.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 29 of 282 - Page ID # 23093

1	$\cap$	С	$\sim$
T	U	С	Ζ

1	Q. Mr. Wenzel, in 1999, when this jury's being asked to
2	imagine the hypothetical negotiation, would you have agreed to
3	a royalty that would have required you to turn over \$250 out of
4	the \$350 profit you made on the mower?
5	A. We wouldn't have been able to, no.
6	Q. Now, I want to ask you an alternative just to draw the
7	distinction between revenues and profits. If we apply
8	Ms. Bennis's royalty of 5 percent, apply it to not your
9	revenue, what you give to Caterpillar and your sales folks and
10	all that, but to your profit, how much would that work out to
11	per mower?
12	A. Let's see, between 17, \$18.
13	Q. So 17.50 is the price if you paid 5 percent of your
14	profits to Exmark; is that right?
15	A. That's correct.
16	Q. Would you have contemplated that as a potential reasonable
17	business solution if you would have negotiated in 1999 with
18	Exmark?
19	A. I would think that would be reasonable to consider.
20	MR. WOLF: I'd like to mark this. What's our next
21	number? 1411?
22	Your Honor, we would move the admission of Exhibit 1411.
23	THE COURT: Any objection?
24	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, we would object. They
25	have their own damages expert with his own schedules. This is

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 30 of 282 - Page ID # 23094

1	just the witness's testimony and the jury's seen it.
2	THE COURT: This is for demonstrative purposes,
3	counsel, so I'm going to sustain the objection, but you've
4	already used it as a demonstrative.
5	MR. WOLF: Okay. Well then we'll just use it
6	we'll label it demonstrative 1411, is that
7	THE COURT: Just leave it 1411 and we'll keep track.
8	MR. WOLF: Thank you, Your Honor.
9	THE COURT: You can when you're arguing your
10	damages case, I'm sure we'll see 1411 again.
11	MR. WOLF: You might, Your Honor. You might.
12	THE COURT: Yeah, go ahead.
13	BY MR. WOLF:
14	Q. Now, we talked yesterday
15	MR. WOLF: And Alex, we can take that down.
16	BY MR. WOLF:
17	Q. You told us yesterday about what Ferris was doing in its
18	brochures regarding displaying its baffle. You recall that?
19	A. Yes.
20	Q. We looked at several brochures showing Ferris's
21	advertising of, among many other things, the underside of its
22	deck, right?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. Okay. There was some discussion of trade shows. Did you
25	attend trade shows on a regular basis?

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 31 of 282 - Page ID # 23095

1	Α.	The big ones. I didn't go there's hundreds of trade
2	show	s everywhere. Big ones I would go to.
3	Q.	So roughly how many trade shows would you go to a year?
4	A.	One or two.
5	Q.	And did you see other products at those trade shows that
6	had	baffles?
7	Α.	Yeah, yeah. Yes.
8	Q.	And did Exmark, to your knowledge, attend those trade
9	show	s as well?
10	A.	Yes.
11	Q.	Did you actually see folks from Exmark at those trade
12	show	s?
13	A.	Sure.
14	Q.	Who do you know at Exmark personally?
15	A.	Garry Busboom.
16	Q.	Do you know Mr. Dorn or Mr. Stinson?
17	A.	I don't.
18	Q.	But Mr. Busboom, someone you know reasonably well?
19	A.	Well, enough to say, "Hi, Garry" at a show. We didn't,
20	you	know, have pizza and beer afterwards, but certainly enough
21	resp	ect for, "Hello. How you doing?"
22	Q.	And no one at Exmark ever came up to you to talk to you
23	abou	t your baffles; is that right?
24	Α.	That's right.
25	Q.	If they had done so, Mr. Wenzel, what would you have done

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 32 of 282 - Page ID # 23096

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

if Exmark had come up to you at any of these trade shows or if
they had written you a letter or an email or a phone call in
'99 or 2000 and 2001 and said, hey, you might want to take a
look at your baffles. You might want to talk to your patent
attorney. You might be infringing our patent.
What would you have done?
A. Well, I think the first thing I would have done is thank
them for bringing that to my attention.
And probably would have asked, well, what do you suggest
would be the best way for us to take a look at this? Whether
it be to start with a conference call or whatever it might be.
I'd be and we'd do this as quickly as possible. So you're
bringing this to my attention, you lay out a process, and let's
go at it.
Q. If you came to the conclusion that there was a risk of
infringement based on these conversations, what would you have
done?
A. I I, of course, as soon as I hung up with with them,
or in person or whatever it was, I'd call our patent attorney
and let him know that, hey, we might have a problem here.
Q. And if you determined, with your patent attorney, that
there may be a problem, what was the next step? What would you
have done as a result of that?
A. Well, if if patent attorney says that, you know, you're
awful close to the border, I can do some more analysis but
awiui ciose to the border, i can do some more analysis but

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 33 of 282 - Page ID # 23097

r	
1	let's just say we infringed, then we would have to go back to
2	Exmark in this case and say, looks like we're on our
3	property on your property, we're sorry, we're going to get
4	off there as quick as we can or would you consider licensing it
5	to us.
6	Q. Is infringement good for business?
7	A. Oh, my gosh, no. No.
8	Q. Why do you say that?
9	A. I mean, you you build your company on your innovation
10	and what you bring to the market with your competitors. I
11	don't I don't know of any sustainable or successful business
12	case that was built on trying to copy your copy your
13	competitors, much less the market leaders in the industry. I
14	just I've never seen an example of anything like that be
15	successful.
16	Q. Now, at those trade shows, and I want to focus on a
17	particular time frame here, let's say the the mid-2000s
18	onward, did you see Scag's deck?
19	A. Sure, I saw it at a trade show.
20	Q. If you could look
21	MR. WOLF: Don't publish it.
22	BY MR. WOLF:
23	Q. If you could look at Exhibit 240 in your binder, please.
24	So one just the front page of Exhibit 240.
25	A. Yes.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 34 of 282 - Page ID # 23098

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

l	
1	Q. Are you there?
2	A. Yes, I am.
3	Q. Is Exhibit 240 consistent with your understanding of what
4	the Scag deck looked like and looks like to this day from, say,
5	the mid-2000s forward?
6	A. You know, I can't speak year to year but, generally
7	speaking, it looks about like that.
8	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, we would move the admission
9	I note this is a plaintiff's exhibit, 240.
10	THE COURT: Any objection to 240?
11	MR. VANDENBURGH: No, Your Honor.
12	THE COURT: 240's received.
13	MR. WOLF: All right.
14	BY MR. WOLF:
15	Q. And this is consistent with your recollection of what the
16	Scag decks looks like from mid 2000s to today; is that right?
17	A. Again, in general. I don't study the underside of them,
18	but that I do believe that's pretty close, yeah.
19	Q. Could you show us the metal I mean, maybe you can use
20	your finger, and just trace the shape of the metal facing the
21	blade. I don't want to get into a dispute about what's a
22	baffle and what's a wall. But just can you trace
23	A. Okay. (The witness complied.)
24	Q. So that's the the front baffle wall area. Then could
25	you circle the back baffle wall area.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 35 of 282 - Page ID # 23099

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	A. (The witness complied.)
2	Q. Thank you.
3	A. I don't know if that's perfect, but
4	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, we we have a better image
5	of this that I'd like to just show purely for demonstrative
6	purposes consistent with some previous discussions we've had.
7	Derek, it's the upper right corner and we'll just show the
8	picture of Exhibit 678.
9	THE COURT: Any objection, Mr. Vandenburgh?
10	MR. WOLF: We're not going to seek to introduce it.
11	THE COURT: I understand but
12	MR. WOLF: Yeah.
13	THE COURT: you're effectively introducing it.
14	MR. VANDENBURGH: Yes, Your Honor. This is one of
15	the exhibits that was ruled on before trial.
16	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, may I approach just to show
17	you
18	THE COURT: Yes.
19	MR. WOLF: what we're talking about?
20	THE COURT: Yes, you may. Just hand it to the
21	courtroom deputy.
22	MR. WOLF: All I'm going to do is blow up that
23	because it's a better look of what we were just looking at.
24	THE COURT: So you're not introducing the exhibit,
25	just the blow-up of the picture in the exhibit, correct?

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 36 of 282 - Page ID # 23100

1039

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1 MR. WOLF: Right. And no text, Your Honor, or 2 anything like that. 3 THE COURT: Okay. And your objection is? MR. VANDENBURGH: Based on your earlier ruling, there 4 was an issue of the timing of the disclosure of this. 5 6 THE COURT: No, I understand. Overruled. So you can 7 display just the --8 MR. WOLF: Right. 9 THE COURT: -- deck part of this exhibit. 10 MR. WOLF: Alex, would you show me what you're going 11 to display. I'll just make sure... 12 Perfect. Yeah, that's it. 13 Yeah, go ahead. BY MR. WOLF: 14 15 Q. All right. So now we see a -- a -- is this consistent 16 with the Exhibit 240 Scag deck we were just looking at? 17 A. Yes, it is. 18 THE COURT: And --19 BY MR. WOLF: 20 0. And --21 THE COURT: And Mr. Wolf, for the record, that is a 22 portion of Exhibit what? 23 MR. WOLF: It is the upper right-hand corner of 24 Defense Exhibit 678. 25 THE COURT: Thank you very much.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 37 of 282 - Page ID # 23101

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	MR. WOLF: Thank you, Your Honor.
2	BY MR. WOLF:
3	Q. So, again, could you just circle the front baffle, slash,
4	wall area.
5	A. Front baffle?
6	Q. Yeah.
7	A. (The witness complied.)
8	Q. And then could you also circle the rear baffle area.
9	A. (The witness complied.)
10	Q. Thank you. To your knowledge, Mr. Wenzel, is there any
11	patent or any other reason why if tomorrow you wanted to adopt
12	this design you couldn't do so?
13	A. Yes.
14	Q. What is that?
15	A. The fact that this baffle is adjustable up and down.
16	There's no problem with the shape, to my knowledge, but I
17	believe that it is adjustable up and down. You see those
18	little silver
19	I'm not an expert on it, but I do believe there's
20	something there.
21	Q. So when Ms. Bennis referred to a patent on the Scag, your
22	understanding is that the patent is on the adjustability of the
23	baffle height?
24	A. Yes.
25	Q. Now, if you wanted to tomorrow make the Scag deck with

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 38 of 282 - Page ID # 23102

1041

i	
1	exactly the same shape but just not adjustable, is there
2	anything that would prevent you from doing that?
3	A. Not that I'm aware of.
4	Q. There came a time when
5	MR. WOLF: We can take that down, Alex. Thank you.
6	BY MR. WOLF:
7	Q. There came a time when Briggs in fact did redesign its
8	front baffle; is that right?
9	A. When we did redesign our front baffle?
10	Q. Yes.
11	A. Yes.
12	Q. And when was that?
13	A. In 2010.
14	Q. And was that in response to this lawsuit?
15	A. Yes, it was.
16	Q. How much, roughly speaking, did it cost Briggs to redesign
17	its front baffle in response to this lawsuit?
18	A. Probably in the neighborhood of 50 to \$100,000.
19	Q. And who was primarily responsible for that redesign, or
20	implementing it?
21	A. Our engineering group.
22	Q. Was Mr. Laurin
23	A. Yeah, he was he was in charge of the group that was
24	heading that project up.
25	Q. And the jury will hear from Mr. Laurin tomorrow.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 39 of 282 - Page ID # 23103

1042

I	
1	Was it your belief that with the redesign, the
2	curved-curved-curved redesign, that you had stepped off of
3	Exmark's property?
4	A. Yes, we had extensive review on that.
5	Q. Going back to 1999, this hypothetical negotiation, if
6	Exmark said to you, well, our bottom line is we're not going to
7	take less than \$250 a mower, 5 percent of your entire revenue,
8	how would you have responded if they had taken that hardline
9	position?
10	A. Well, it's really pretty simple, you can't afford it, so
11	you can't agree to it.
12	Q. At some point would the price of the license demand of
13	Exmark in that hypothetical negotiation been low enough that it
14	would have made sense to pay the license fee rather than
15	redesign your baffle?
16	A. Certainly.
17	Q. And was that the number we looked at before, the 5 percent
18	of of of profits, about the line there?
19	A. I don't know if it's exactly the line. I would say it
20	would be the line if we were going to continue to use it
21	indefinitely. We might agree to something else higher for a
22	brief period of time if they were to say, you know, we won't go
23	after your inventory, we won't do this, just pay us. You know,
24	that could have been possibly affordable. It would be another
25	type of discussion we could have had.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 40 of 282 - Page ID # 23104

1	Ω	4	3
_	U	ᄀ	$\mathcal{I}$

1	
1	Q. Now, let's shift gears to the process that Ferris used to
2	make sure it didn't infringe patents. That process didn't
3	succeed here, did it?
4	A. It did not.
5	Q. But let's describe the process nonetheless.
6	How long did Ferris have and if I use the term patent
7	review process, does that make sense to you?
8	A. Yes.
9	Q. Can you tell the jury generally what a patent review
10	process is?
11	A. Patent review process is where there's kind of two
12	sections of it. Redesign a completely new product, say we're
13	building a new commercial walk-behind and we haven't been
14	building commercial walk-behinds.
15	Can I take should I take them through the whole
16	process?
17	Q. Sure.
18	A. Okay. What we would do is, through feedback, through the
19	sales field or our just general knowledge, we would take a look
20	probably at who was the leader in that field and is that where
21	we would want to compete as a company. Not always you want to
22	be competing with the leader, but most often you want to
23	compare yourself with the best. And if they were leading, we
24	would probably collect as much information about that as we
25	could, determine what our competitive position that we would

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 41 of 282 - Page ID # 23105

1	want to take against that product, how he would want to compete
2	with that. And then we would review that product by looking at
3	literature, possi and and bringing our patent counsel in
4	to say, hey, this is what we want to compete with, here's the
5	things we want to do to differentiate ourselves from this, what
6	should we do next?
7	And if there are stickers on that product, you know, we
8	would look at those at that time. We do a complete product.
9	And, you know, there goes your analysis. They do
10	things they have ways to find things that, you know, aren't
11	obvious or easy for us to do.
12	Now, it's a little different from if, say, we're going to
13	change there's a part a part of the product that you want
14	to modify. You don't necessarily go back and look at
15	everything on the whole mower and review everything that
16	anybody might have had a patent on, it's been on the market.
17	So you just take a look at what you're changing.
18	So understand there's a there's a less I won't call
19	it thorough, there's just a a different process for if
20	you're changing something small on there or at least
21	significant significantly small, I don't know if that makes
22	sense, but versus introducing a whole new product. It's a
23	little bit different process.
24	Q. How long has Ferris had a patent review process in place?
25	A. I know back when I was part of Ferris, you know, I started

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 42 of 282 - Page ID # 23106

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	$\cap$	Л	Б
$\perp$	υ	4	С

r	
1	in 1972. I don't know exactly what they did back then. I was
2	general production laborer. But certainly since the '80s, I
3	knew about what we did with the feed carts, the agricultural.
4	And then it and I continued the process from 1985 to 1995.
5	Q. Has that process evolved over time, the patent review
6	process?
7	A. Through at Ferris or
8	Q. Well, let's start that's a good point. Let me break it
9	down.
10	Let's start with the '90s, before Briggs & Stratton came
11	along and purchased Ferris. Tell me about how the patent
12	review process worked at Ferris prior to 2004. Was that what
13	you basically just described?
14	A. Yeah. And I guess I kind of did it the other day too when
15	talked about, you know, we were building agricultural equipment
16	and we decided we wanted to build lawn mowers, so Dane Scag was
17	the leader. I mean, I won't say we necessarily call the people
18	up as a habit but we did in that case and we looked at the
19	stickers and we looked at all his advertising, and our patent
20	attorney thoroughly went through it. I don't I don't
21	generally start reading the patents, they're too technical.
22	And they explain all of the things that you areas that you
23	should avoid. And they also try to help us identify where
24	there might be opportunities.
25	Q. Was there ever a time where the patent review process

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 43 of 282 - Page ID # 23107

1	
1	identified something that you couldn't do because a patent
2	already existed?
3	A. Oh, sure.
4	Q. Can you give an example?
5	A. Let's see, give an example. Well, I know that when we
6	were taking a look to do our what we call the iCD deck, the
7	one that's in question here, one of the areas we were thinking
8	about was I think it's been brought into evidence here, you
9	understand we we opened up and made the discharge, where the
10	grass comes out, made that area wider, okay?
11	One consideration was, gee, would there be any advantage
12	to having that area adjustable? Because it could be in
13	different grass conditions that have a there may be a great
14	big opening doesn't work quite as well in all conditions.
15	And we discovered there was several patents in the area of
16	adjustability of discharge openings.
17	Q. And was one of those patents, in fact, did one of them
18	belong to Toro?
19	A. Yes, one belonged to Toro, one to John Deere. I mean,
20	that's there could have even been others. Bottom line is
21	our patent counsel told us it's kind of a minefield, stay away
22	from it if you can.
23	Q. And did you stay away from it?
24	A. Yeah, it wasn't that important to us.
25	Q. If it if it was important to you, would you have just

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 44 of 282 - Page ID # 23108

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	gone ahead and infringed the patent?
2	A. No, no.
3	Q. Now, this patent review process you just described, let me
4	ask the \$64,000 question and I think I'm betraying my age by
5	using that phrase, but I don't think that show's on anymore.
6	Why didn't do you have an understanding, a guess,
7	speculation or anything, why didn't the patent review process
8	in place at Ferris uncover claim 1 of the '863 patent as being
9	relevant to the baffle?
10	A. Again, Dale Baumbach would have done that process in that
11	time period. And I'm I don't see any reason why he wouldn't
12	have. He wouldn't have found it because when he designed that
13	and put it in production, there was no patent to see.
14	Q. So as part of the patent review process at Ferris, when
15	you started a product, you looked existing patents; is that
16	right?
17	A. That's correct.
18	Q. Did as part of that process, did you ever go back in
19	time and look at patents that may have issued after the fact?
20	You understand my question? Wasn't very good.
21	A. If I understand it, in other words, you know, we
22	introduced this product in 1998 and this patent came out in
23	1999. Is our process to look back and after we have
24	something in production, selling it to the public, showing it,
25	selling it, to look back and see if there might be a patent

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 45 of 282 - Page ID # 23109

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	
1	newly issued that wasn't available during the process? No, we
2	did not.
3	Q. What did you rely on to deal with patents that issued
4	after you had introduced a product?
5	A. Well, I guess we didn't have it at the time, being the
6	size of the company, we didn't have it identified as a risk,
7	but I guess we relied on people saying something to us. You
8	know, they've got a new patent and, hey, you're on my property.
9	Q. Did anybody ever say anything to you about the baffles?
10	A. No.
11	Q. Remind us how big Ferris was in 1999 just before
12	Simplicity bought them or
13	A. We were about 60, 70 employees.
14	Q. Sitting here today, how much does Briggs & Stratton spend
15	on its patent review process? Do you know roughly?
16	A. I don't know the total amount. They do have someone
17	that or someones, not just one person, that does do that,
18	does look and analyze newly published patents and if they have
19	any application to our business. And it's my understanding
20	it's just shy of a million dollars for just that part of it.
21	That's not the whole process, just that part of it.
22	Q. So that million dollars that Briggs spends each year
23	today, how does that compare to the profitability of Ferris at
24	the time that the old design came out?
25	A. Well, that would have been more than what we than our

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 46 of 282 - Page ID # 23110

1	take-home pay.
2	Q. So in other words, the price of the kind of check you're
3	talking about would have been more than all the money you made
4	at the time?
5	A. That's correct.
6	Q. Generally speaking, Mr. Wenzel, from 1999-2010 when this
7	lawsuit was filed, did you rely on patent attorneys to tell you
8	if there was a risk of infringement?
9	A. We did.
10	Q. Who was your patent attorney?
11	A. At what time?
12	Q. In the '99 to 2010 time frame.
13	A. Michael Best and Friedrich.
14	Q. That's the name of a law firm?
15	A. Law firm. Oh, the actual attorney?
16	Q. Yeah.
17	A. Jerry Fellows.
18	Q. Let me ask it more broadly then. At any time from 1999 to
19	2010, did Jerry Fellows specifically, or anybody at Michael
20	Best generally tell you that you were at risk of infringing the
21	'863 patent?
22	A. No.
23	Q. Did anybody at any time anywhere tell you that you were at
24	risk of infringing the '863 patent before this lawsuit was
25	filed?

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 47 of 282 - Page ID # 23111

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	A. No.
2	Q. Now, you were just talking a minute ago about the iCD
3	deck.
4	A. Yes.
5	Q. Could you tell the jury what the iCD deck is, was?
6	A. We the deck iCD, one of the sales guys came up with
7	that, felt that since we were doing work on it they wanted to
8	give it a name, call more attention to it, so they called it
9	Ideal Cut and Discharge. That's what the acronym stood for.
10	Q. And when did you introduce the iCD deck?
11	A. I think 2008.
12	Q. And did you introduce it across all of your products?
13	A. We did.
14	Q. Okay. Let's let's look at an exhibit or actually a
15	demonstrative that Ms. Bennis used yesterday during her direct.
16	And it says do you recall seeing this?
17	A. Yes, I do.
18	Q. Says: Introducing the iCD Cutting System.
19	Just to be clear, you were introducing it across every
20	product you had, big, small, right?
21	A. Yes.
22	THE COURT: And this is Exhibit 313?
23	MR. WOLF: Yeah. It was on I believe it was
24	admitted yesterday, Your Honor.
25	THE COURT: No, I just want the record to reflect

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 48 of 282 - Page ID # 23112

1	what we're looking at.
2	MR. WOLF: I apologize, Your Honor. Yes,
3	Exhibit 313. And I believe it was demonstrative Slide 4 from
4	Ms. Bennis's direct.
5	BY MR. WOLF:
6	Q. Says: Offering you unparalleled cut quality with
7	redesigned baffle chambers for superior airflow and optimum
8	discharge.
9	First question: What is a baffle chamber? Who came up
10	with that term?
11	A. Oh, it might have even been me. You know, marketing was
12	going over the, you know, what what'd you guys change? We
13	had a list. And we were explaining the we opened up the
14	discharge area and marketing likes to have kind of attractive
15	names to call stuff and they said well, could you call that the
16	baffle chamber? Yeah, I guess you could. I don't know if it
17	means the whole baffle chamber, but it is a baffle chamber, so,
18	yeah, I guess you could probably call it that. That's the
19	extent of the analysis that was done on that.
20	Q. So I want to focus on the word "redesigned." Here you are
21	touting what was new and redesigned. That was what was the iCD
22	deck, right?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. What was redesigned in 19 in 2008-2009 in the iCD deck
25	compared to a few years before? And could you tell the jury.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 49 of 282 - Page ID # 23113

1052

		EL - DITECC (WOIT) 1032
1	A.	You want everything or just
2	Q.	Well, the highlights.
3	Α.	The highlights? Okay.
4		We opened up the discharge opening, I think about two
5	inch	es or so.
6		We increased the blade speed.
7		We redesigned our mower blade. On the end of a mower
8	blad	e, I don't know if you're familiar with, they have a little
9	wing	, like an airplane wing or on the back of it. Changed
10	the	angle of it. Changed the length of it.
11		We also we spent a lot of time on the blade.
12		We increased the length that we sharpen the blade.
13		We introduced a new spindle that had cone shape to it.
14		Let's see.
15	Q.	You're looking at that picture over there. Would it help
16	to p	oint to that? Is that what I see
17	Α.	Well, I don't know. I'm just trying to, you know, refresh
18	my m	emory.
19	Q.	Okay.
20	Α.	Again, I know a broad overview of all this stuff.
21	Mr.	Laurin was the chief project guy. He could tell you in
22	inti	mate detail.
23		But the other thing we did do, I remember thanks for
24	jogg	ing my memory here is we we previously had a a
25	flat	nose on the front of the deck, just squared. And may not

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 50 of 282 - Page ID # 23114

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

г	
1	seem like much but we tipped it out at a 45-degree angle.
2	Q. Did in any way, shape or form, you change, as part of the
3	iCD process, the baffle that's at issue in claim 1, that right
4	side of the baffle, the curved-straight-curved?
5	A. No, we did not.
6	Q. So when you were advertising this Ms. Bennis's three
7	slides about this redesigned baffle chamber, were you
8	advertising the baffles or everything but the baffles?
9	A. Well, it's the area inside of the baffles, yeah.
10	Q. And and had everything what had been Let me just
11	ask. Had the baffles been changed?
12	A. No.
13	Q. Had everything else just about been changed?
14	A. Everything else?
15	Q. Well, fair. I'm you went through the list of what
16	A. Yes.
17	Q actually had been changed, right?
18	A. Yes.
19	Q. Thank you. Sometimes I put rhetorical flourishes on
20	questions and I should just let the facts speak.
21	And this brochure was touting the benefits of the changes;
22	is that right?
23	A. Yes, it was.
24	Q. Did you test the iCD deck against the old deck to see how
25	it compared in performance?

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 51 of 282 - Page ID # 23115

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	A. We did.
2	Q. And how did it perform?
3	A. It was it was an improvement over what we had before,
4	particularly in taller grass and wetter grass. Grass could get
5	out easier. And the blade increased the air flow. And by
6	making the blade sharpened longer, we were able to pick up
7	we had just more sharp edge, being able to be in contact with
8	the grass. We were able to pick up some of those stragglers
9	and things that you would leave from time to time.
10	Q. So whether we say that your cut prior to the iCD was poor
11	or good or average, whatever label we put on it, did it improve
12	significantly as a result of the changes of the iCD deck?
13	A. Yes, it did.
14	Q. Did Ferris well, now of course Briggs at the time do
15	a patent review on the iCD deck before it launched the iCD?
16	A. We did.
17	Q. What did you focus on in the patent review process for the
18	iCD?
19	A. All the things that we changed.
20	Q. Did you focus on the things you didn't change?
21	A. We did not.
22	Q. Shifting topics. You were here when Mr. Dorn from Exmark
23	said that Ferris had competed with it for business with a
24	company known as Brickman?
25	A. Yes.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 52 of 282 - Page ID # 23116

1	Q. And I think we heard this, but very briefly, who is
2	Brickman?
3	A. I think probably Mr. Dorn probably has the most accurate
4	description. Largest franchised franchise meaning they have
5	many locations throughout the United States landscape
6	company in the in the United States.
7	Q. Can you tell the jury about your understanding of the
8	interactions with Brickman that Mr. Dorn touched on last week?
9	How did Ferris-Briggs come in contact with Brickman? What
10	happened?
11	A. Well, they were they were on our you know, we're
12	trying to grow the company. They're on our radar screen. The
13	sales guys were looking to see, you know, is this something we
14	should go after? You know, it would be we knew it would be
15	a big undertaking to try to compete for that business, didn't
16	know if we were up to it or not.
17	But coincidentally, one of the dealers that that works
18	with the Baltimore office, which is their headquarters,
19	Baltimore, called and said he's one of our dealers also,
20	he's also an Exmark dealer. He says I'm getting I'm getting
21	a little nervous here. He's very close to the Brickman and
22	Group there. I'm getting a little nervous about John
23	Deere's really trying to crack that door open at at
24	Brickman's and I'm concerned that, you know, I'm going to lose
25	a whole bunch of business if they're successful. Would you

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 53 of 282 - Page ID # 23117

i	
1	guys would you guys come down and talk to them to see if you
2	would be if they would consider your product?
3	Q. Did he did you have an understanding of why it was that
4	this dealer was nervous that Brickman might turn from Exmark at
5	the time?
6	A. He had a few things that Brickman had expressed to him
7	that they were disgruntled about.
8	Q. And what was the disgruntlement, if that's a word?
9	A. Well, actually, without going through third party, I
10	actually went down and met with, along with our sales guys,
11	said I'd kind of like to tag along on this visit and I'd like
12	to understand a little bit more.
13	Q. And what did you learn?
14	A. What I learned was they were you know, you got to
15	remember the time period here is the economic downturn and
16	they're struggling because people are big part of their
17	business was what they call hardscaping, trees, brick pavers,
18	you know, installations to make properties nice and that just
19	tanked during that the recession, and their grass cutting
20	also, people were saying, well, you know, can we cut back on
21	that a little bit?
22	So, you know, they're looking at it. And they were
23	three things that they expressed to me was that they were
24	disgruntled that Exmark continued to raise prices with them,
25	and that they did a lot of research and testing for Exmark.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 54 of 282 - Page ID # 23118

1	And again, this is just their their opinion. They didn't
2	feel that they were getting their due, so to speak, with that.
3	And the third thing was they were seeing more what
4	they use their words, little widgets appear on the product
5	that had no value to them. And when they would break or fall
6	off or they'd take them off and then went to trade them back
7	in, they had to buy all those little widgets that they didn't
8	want in the first place, trade them back in. So they thought
9	that was a little unfair.
10	Q. So just to be clear, in this back and forth, did Ferris
11	first approach Brickman or did Brickman did a dealer first
12	approach Ferris about getting the two of you together?
13	A. The dealer approached Ferris. I mean, not to say that we
14	wouldn't you know, Brickman would visit our booth and say
15	hello and look at our products every year, but that was about
16	it.
17	Q. How many mowers did Brickman purchase from Ferris-Briggs
18	in, say, 2010?
19	A. None.
20	Q. Did Ferris ever sign a contract with Brickman?
21	A. We did not.
22	Q. When Brickman was kicking your tires, do you know whether
23	they were also checking out the possibility of using someone
24	other than entirely different than Exmark and Ferris?
25	A. Well, that's what we believe. I don't have any evidence

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 55 of 282 - Page ID # 23119

1	$\cap$	F	0
	υ	S	0

,	
1	to that effect. But that's what the dealer you know, he's
2	pretty close to them and felt that John Deere was wrestling
3	with them pretty pretty closely.
4	Q. So at least the dealer thought that John Deere was also in
5	the mix?
6	A. Yes.
7	Q. Now, has Ferris had similar experiences with Ruppert?
8	A. Yes.
9	Q. Can you tell me about that or tell the jury, not me,
10	tell the jury about that.
11	A. I could add a little bit to the to the Brickman story
12	too, is why they what they were happy that we went there.
13	Q. If you want to, go ahead.
14	A. Oh, I think it's kind of important, is they
15	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor
16	THE WITNESS: Okay, can't do that?
17	MR. VANDENBURGH: he's getting ready to volunteer
18	some more hearsay.
19	THE WITNESS: No, it's not hearsay. I was there.
20	THE COURT: Well, just a second.
21	Overruled. You can continue.
22	BY MR. WOLF:
23	Q. Please.
24	A. Okay. You know, Brickman was disgruntled with a few
25	things there. They'd had some trouble with Kawasaki engines

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 56 of 282 - Page ID # 23120

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	also and they felt that and I don't know if you know in a
2	lawn mower, you've got the lawn mower, which is generally
3	warrantied by the like a Ferris or an Exmark, something like
4	that. The engine is warrantied by the engine manufacturer.
5	And so that's technically not supported by the lawn mower
6	manufacturer. They had a lot of Kawasaki engine problems and
7	they knew that arrangement but they thought that
8	Brickman or that Exmark should have helped them some more.
9	Actually, their strategy was a lot deeper than that.
10	Because of that experience, they wanted to see if someone
11	that a company that had both the engine and the end product
12	and would warranty it all as one and reduce their supplier
13	base, that was part of their bigger strategy, was to try to
14	reduce their supplier base because they felt that would overall
15	lower the cost of their business. They were doing that across
16	their business, not just for the lawn mowers in particular.
17	Q. So just to be clear, you have I mean, the you have a
18	lawn mower that can be made by somebody and the engine can be
19	made by either that same person or someone altogether
20	different?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. Just like the the Ferris mower we saw yesterday didn't
23	actually have a Briggs engine in it, it had a Caterpillar
24	engine in it, right?
25	A. That's correct.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 57 of 282 - Page ID # 23121

1	Q. And that's just based on whatever the lawn mower folks
2	think would be the best particular engine for whatever
3	application?
4	A. Right.
5	Q. We were talking about Ruppert then. We were just starting
6	to talk about Ruppert.
7	A. Okay.
8	Q. Can you tell the jury about what you understand about the
9	Ruppert discussions that Mr. Dorn brought up last week.
10	A. They were very similar. No I happen to know they were
11	talking to John Deere because I didn't go on every visit but
12	I I've gone down there a couple of times. I saw the John
13	Deere test mower there.
14	They had a similar situation. They weren't they didn't
15	have anything they just were looking to lower their purchase
16	cost more than they didn't have as big a strategy as
17	Brickman. They're just saying, hey, it's a downturn, we're
18	struggling here to justify buying new mowers, our others are
19	about wore out and we're struggling with the price based on
20	where we're at right now.
21	Q. Did what's the nature of Ferris's Briggs's
22	relationship with Ruppert today?
23	A. We don't sell any mowers to Ruppert today.
24	Q. I want to shift topics to a little bit later in 2010. The
25	redesign of who was I believe you said Mr. Laurin was

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 58 of 282 - Page ID # 23122

1061

г	
1	primarily responsible for implementing the redesign?
2	A. He was in charge of overseeing all the testing,
3	development and ultimate implementation, yes.
4	Q. So I'll leave most of the detailed questions for for
5	him for likely tomorrow. But let me ask you a few high-level
6	questions.
7	When in 2010 did the new design move into production?
8	A. Oh, I don't know if I remember the exact date.
9	Sometime
10	Q. Do you remember roughly how long after this lawsuit was
11	filed that
12	A. Oh, oh, I'm I'm sorry. I apologize. I thought you
13	were I messed up here. I thought you were talking about the
14	iCD deck. You're asking me about the redesigned iCD deck.
15	Sorry.
16	Q. That's
17	A. Go ahead.
18	Q. Let me reorient. That's a great point. That was my
19	fault, not yours.
20	So we were talking about the iCD deck that was a redesign
21	of the the discharge opening and the spindles and the
22	blades, right?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. Now, shortly thereafter, a year or two after that, there
25	was a there was a new redesign, right, and this time we were

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 59 of 282 - Page ID # 23123

1	talking about the baffles themselves?
2	A. Yes.
3	Q. Is that right?
4	A. That's correct.
5	Q. All right. And I should have been clearer. So with the
6	baffles themselves, for the first time since 1998 there was
7	a a redesign in 2002; is that right? 2010. Is that right?
8	A. Yes.
9	Q. And the reason you the primary reason you redesigned
10	the baffles in 2010 was?
11	A. Because of this lawsuit.
12	Q. All right. And how long after this lawsuit was filed did
13	you start rolling into production the redesigned baffles?
14	A. I believe the suit was filed in May of 2010 and all and
15	all all mower decks had the new design baffles November 1st,
16	2010.
17	Q. Did the change in the baffle design from the old design,
18	the curved-straight-curved design to the new design, the
19	curved-curved-curved design, did that affect the performance of
20	the mower?
21	A. A little bit, yeah.
22	Q. And how did it affect the performance of the mower?
23	A. Made it a little better.
24	Q. So it the new design is actually a little better than
25	the old design?

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 60 of 282 - Page ID # 23124

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	A. Yes.		
2	Q. How do you know that?		
3	A. Because I went to I was concerned about our customers		
4	and whenever you're making a change of something you had in		
5	production for a number of years, so I wanted to know what our		
6	customers might think and so I went to many of the sessions		
7	where they were testing.		
8	Q. So there was actual testing of the new design versus the		
9	old design?		
10	A. Yes.		
11	Q. Roughly how many are you aware of, personally?		
12	A. Oh, boy. I good question.		
13	Q. Five, ten, fifteen?		
14	A. Oh, at least, yes.		
15	Q. And what did you see in those five or ten or fifteen, at		
16	least, tests of the old design versus the new design?		
17	A. The actual cut wasn't much different, but I think we had		
18	just a slightly bit better, more even discharge.		
19	Q. And what do you mean by discharge?		
20	A. Well, the grass clippings coming out the chute and being		
21	distributed along the line along the lawn.		
22	Q. Is the new design, does it differ at all in terms of		
23	manufacturability than the old design?		
24	A. Yeah, that's one of the things I liked about it a lot is		
25	because Bob was ahead of me and, you know, it was going to be a		

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 61 of 282 - Page ID # 23125

1	lot easier to manufacture also.
2	Q. Can you explain to the jury what you mean by it was a lot
3	easier to manufacture.
4	A. Well, it's a before you had, just like it says, you
5	have a curved section, then you've got straight section. And
6	what you had to do is take these straight pieces and try to
7	just put this curve a little bit on the end. That's that's
8	more difficult than it than it actually might seem by
9	looking at it. Get that precisely where that straight ends and
10	the curve comes.
11	Now we can just simply take all curves, all being the same
12	radius, and just bend those, bend them all the same, per the
13	deck size because each deck has a different size blade, and
14	then just put them in the deck, so
15	Q. So it's made your life easier for manufacturing?
16	A. Made my manufacturing hat that's one of the hats I
17	wear a lot easier, yes.
18	Q. Just a few more topics and then I'll turn you over to
19	Mr. Vandenburgh for his questions.
20	I want to get back to the different features of the mower.
21	I believe you testified you interact with customers in your
22	role?
23	A. I do.
24	Q. And for how many years have you been interacting with
25	customers?

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 62 of 282 - Page ID # 23126

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

Ī			
1	Α.	I would say since about 1975.	
2	Q. In your interactions with your customers, have you learned		
3	what	what features of a Ferris mower are important to them?	
4	A.	I I I do, yes.	
5	Q.	And over the course of the last 15, 20, 25 years, have you	
6	interacted regularly with your distributors?		
7	Α.	Yes.	
8	Q.	And with your dealers?	
9	Α.	Yes.	
10	Q.	And these are the people that actually buy the Ferris	
11	produ	acts on the way to the end user; is that right?	
12	Α.	Yes.	
13	Q.	You've heard Exmark in this case talk about how it has	
14	made	its brand based on quality of cut. You've heard that?	
15	Α.	Yes, I have.	
16	Q.	Is quality of cut the most important thing to customers	
17	buying your mowers, based on your experience?		
18	Α.	It's not the most important thing.	
19	Q.	What is the most important thing?	
20	Α.	We focus on the the overall productivity of the mower	
21	through the suspension, through the ride, how it handles.		
22	That's what we that's been our primary focus. And		
23	overa	all overall quality and durability of the product too.	
24	Q.	Okay. And just to be clear on some topics that were	
25	comir	ng up yesterday, there were questions about the how	

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 63 of 282 - Page ID # 23127

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

г	
1	the quality of your your cut prior to the iCD deck coming
2	out and some people had characterized it as poor yet you had
3	lots of sales.
4	So when we say poor quality of cut but you're still
5	selling, what are we talking about there?
6	A. You know, that's a it's all relative. It's all
7	relative, I guess, is what we're really talking about. What's
8	acceptable to you know, if you had your lawn cut by a
9	professional landscaper, what would you expect, you know,
10	versus I think I mentioned it yesterday, big hotel, flowers
11	and lot of ornaments out front that, you know, to find a weed
12	in there would be like winning the lottery and it's irrigated
13	and all those things.
14	I mean, the level of everybody and everybody throws
15	everything in the basket of quality of cut. And it but it's
16	really you need to separate it out. Does it discharge the
17	grass better? Does it cut the grass? The cutting of the grass
18	is a finer line. If you throw clumps out there, that's going
19	to be easily noticeable. So and a lot of that's due to the
20	conditions too.
21	So I don't know if I'm doing a very good job of answering
22	your question.
23	Q. No, I think that from my perspective you did. I guess
24	the jury will figure out whether it has more questions.
25	You've heard a lot this past week about how Exmark is a

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 64 of 282 - Page ID # 23128

1	leader in this industry. Do you agree with that?
2	A. Oh, absolutely.
3	Q. And Exmark is is substantially bigger than Ferris; is
4	that right?
5	A. Yes.
6	Q. How much bigger?
7	A. From what we've heard here today, at least double.
8	Q. Was the Lazer Z mid-mount that we've talked about a lot,
9	was that a revolutionary product?
10	A. It was.
11	Q. And what was revolutionary about it in your mind?
12	A. Boy, I mean, it just it just lit the industry on fire
13	there. I think their advertising brochure is very accurate.
14	Those guys did their homework. They didn't just get one thing
15	right, they got everything right.
16	Q. In your entire career, have you heard anyone anywhere,
17	prior to this lawsuit, say that the reason for the Lazer Z's
18	success had anything to do with its front control baffle?
19	A. No.
20	Q. Based on your experience with distributors, dealers and
21	customers, how many features are there that provide value to a
22	mower, generally? A lot? A little?
23	A. A lot, yeah. Sure. It's probably just like be
24	probably an 80/20 role where there's 20 percent of the overall
25	features are really important. The others are important to a

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 65 of 282 - Page ID # 23129

lesser degree. I mean, we had a we had a Exmark survey. I
think that's pretty I would agree with that. I would say
that's a pretty good pretty good measurement. I was pretty
impressed when I saw it.
Q. Can you turn to Exhibit 839 in your binder, please.
A. Yes.
Q. Is this a training manual prepared and maintained in the
ordinary course of business by Ferris, was this?
A. Yeah, it looks like something that our sales folks put
together.
MR. WOLF: Move the admission of 839, Your Honor.
THE COURT: Any objection?
MR. VANDENBURGH: No objection, Your Honor.
THE COURT: 839 is received.
MR. WOLF: If we could go to Bates 1290 and put it
up on the screen.
BY MR. WOLF:
Q. Could you tell us what we're looking at here,
Mr. Wenzel?
A. Yes. The sales guys had put together a list of things
that are on our mowers that they felt was important for our
customers and they assigned a value to those. That was not
scientific. It was their from their interaction with
customers, things what they felt they could sell those features
for, how much value they added.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 66 of 282 - Page ID # 23130

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

i	
1	Q. And this is an internal training document; is that right?
2	A. Yes, it is.
3	Q. And just to be clear, these aren't actual retail prices.
4	This is kind of their estimate of the value of these to a
5	customer?
6	A. That's right. We don't actually sell them individually,
7	no.
8	Q. So could you just read into the record, slowly, the
9	features that your salespeople identified as having value in
10	the 2001 time frame?
11	A. Sure. The first one is ten-gauge that's the gauge of
12	the steel double top mower deck, which means that we you
13	want me to explain or or just read?
14	Q. If there's if there's ambiguity or if it's a little
15	confusing, explain. If it's self-explanatory, just read.
16	A. Okay. I just for the jury, double top mower deck means
17	that, rather than using a single layer for parts of the mower
18	for steel for strength, we actually use a plywood-type and
19	overall that's a little thicker and a little stronger than some
20	of the single piece, so they felt that was pretty important.
21	And they we double reinforce the side skirts because they
22	take a lot of abuse bumping into things.
23	And lap welding, that's probably more technical than we
24	need to get. \$100.
25	Hanging deck frames, \$100.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 67 of 282 - Page ID # 23131

1	$\cap$	7	$\cap$
	U		U

г	
1	Adjustable 360-degree rotating anti-scalp rollers. That's
2	those little wheels on the deck.
3	Foot-operated deck lift. Some had hand-operated deck
4	lifts. It's easier with your foot.
5	Twin A-section hydro drive belts, for longer durability.
6	Internal reserve reservoir. That's kind of a hydraulic
7	thing. I'm not going to try to explain that. It's not very
8	big on the list anyways.
9	Styled fuel tanks with large filler necks. Filler neck is
10	the part that actually where you insert the gas nozzle.
11	It's important for those to be large. Makes it easier for them
12	to refuel them.
13	Two-wheel rear independent suspension.
14	Four-wheel (front and rear) independent suspension.
15	Dual point pivoting front axle.
16	Hydrostatic pumps with cooling fans. Not all hydrostatic
17	systems had cooling systems on them.
18	Dual screen filters. That's probably too technical to
19	bother explaining.
20	And a two-year commercial warranty.
21	Q. Would you confirm for me that there's no mention in your
22	sales force's internal evaluation of the top 12 or so features
23	of your mower, there's no mention of front flow control
24	baffles?
25	A. There's not.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 68 of 282 - Page ID # 23132

WENZEL - Direct (Wolf)

1	Q. In your opinion, what affects quality of cut more, the		
2	shape of the baffle or the blade?		
3	A. The quality of the cut?		
4	Q. Yeah.		
5	A. I would take a sharp blade with any type of a baffle		
6	versus a dull blade and a baffle, I guess the best way to put		
7	it to folks.		
8	Q. Last two questions, Mr. Wenzel. Other than in this case,		
9	has anyone ever accused you personally or Ferris of infringing		
10	a patent?		
11	A. No, never.		
12	Q. Other than this case, has anyone ever accused you or		
13	Ferris of lying, cheating, stealing someone else's design?		
14	A. Absolutely not.		
15	Q. Sitting here today, do you believe you stole Exmark's		
16	design?		
17	A. No.		
18	MR. WOLF: No further questions, Your Honor.		
19	THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen, at this time we'll		
20	take our morning recess. We'll take 15 minutes.		
21	(Jury out at 10:36 a.m.)		
22	THE COURT: Off the record.		
23	(Discussion was had off the record.)		
24	(Recess taken at 10:37 a.m.)		
25	(At 10:55 a.m.; with counsel and the parties'		

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 69 of 282 - Page ID # 23133

1	representatives present; WITHOUT the jury:)
2	PHILIP WENZEL RESUMED THE WITNESS STAND
3	THE COURT: Please be seated.
4	(Jury in at 10:56 a.m.)
5	THE COURT: Please be seated, ladies and gentlemen.
6	Mr. Vandenburgh, you may cross-examine the witness.
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: Thank you.
8	CROSS-EXAMINATION
9	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
10	Q. Good morning, Mr. Wenzel.
11	A. Good morning, Mr. Vandenburgh.
12	Q. I'd like to start with the issue of whether or not the
13	original baffle design that's been found to infringe was copied
14	from Exmark. And I believe that you testified yesterday that
15	it was at least possible that that's what had happened in 1997.
16	A. That's correct.
17	Q. Would you agree that it's likely that that's what
18	happened?
19	A. No, I can't I can't say that.
20	Q. Okay. Let's talk about the idea of coincidences. Do you
21	know what a coincidence is?
22	A. I believe I do.
23	Q. Is it a coincidence when an inventor in the United States
24	comes up with the same idea as an inventor in Siberia, Russia
25	at the same time?

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 70 of 282 - Page ID # 23134

1	A.	Yeah, I guess so. Yes.
2	Q.	That's an example of a coincidence.
3	A.	Coincidence, sure.
4	Q.	Now, in this case though, Mr. Busboom and Mr. Baumbach
5	didn	't come up with this idea at the same time, did they?
6	A.	I don't know.
7	Q.	Well, you heard the testimony from Mr. Busboom that he
8	conc	eived of his invention in 1994, correct?
9	A.	Oh, okay. Yes.
10	Q.	And you don't disagree with that testimony, do you?
11	A.	No.
12	Q.	And you saw the testimony of Mr. Marshall saying that he
13	was	handed a sketch from Mr. Baumbach in the fall of 1996,
14	roug	hly two years later, correct?
15	Α.	That's correct.
16	Q.	Now, at that time you also heard the testimony from
17	Mr.	Marshall that Briggs had an Exmark mower at that time.
18	A.	Yes.
19	Q.	And, in fact, specifically an Exmark Lazer Z?
20	Α.	Yes.
21	Q.	Now, do you recall seeing that mower in 1996?
22	Α.	I do.
23	Q.	Did you use that mower in 1996?
24	Α.	Yes, I drove that mower.
25	Q.	And you've heard the testimony that one of the primary

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 71 of 282 - Page ID # 23135

г		
1	bene	fits of that mower is an improvement in quality of cut?
2	Α.	Yes, I've listened to that testimony.
3	Q.	Now, you'd also agree that the reason Ferris put their
4	fron	t baffle in in the roughly the '97 time frame, was to
5	impr	ove quality of cut?
6	A.	I don't know the reason that Dale put that in there.
7	Q.	Okay. Well, let's talk about that. Are you familiar with
8	what	an engineering change order is?
9	A.	Yes.
10	Q.	Can you well, an engineering change order for Ferris is
11	a do	cument that reflects a change from one physical design to
12	anot	her, correct?
13	Α.	That would be correct, yes.
14	Q.	I'd like you to turn to Tab 36 of your binder, if you
15	woul	d.
16	Α.	Exhibit 36?
17	Q.	Correct.
18	A.	Okay.
19	Q.	Is that a Ferris engineering change form?
20	Α.	Yes, it is.
21	Q.	And what is the date of that engineering change form?
22	Α.	11-19-97.
23	Q.	And does this reflect a change from one drawing number to
24	anot	her drawing number?
25	Α.	Yes, it does.

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 72 of 282 - Page ID # 23136

г	
1	Q. And what is the what is the initial drawing number?
2	A. You want to know what it is?
3	Q. Just read it into the record
4	A. Oh, okay.
5	Q if you would.
6	A. 1531078.
7	Q. Okay. Farther down on the document it indicates they were
8	going to replace one deck weldment with another deck weldment,
9	correct?
10	A. Yes.
11	Q. And what's the deck weldment we're replacing?
12	A. 1545165.
13	Q. I'd like to direct your attention now to Exhibit 49.
14	MR. VANDENBURGH: Has this been admitted?
15	Exhibit 49's been admitted. I'd like to publish,
16	Your Honor.
17	THE COURT: You may.
18	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
19	Q. So if you go between Exhibit 36 and Exhibit 49, this is
20	the weldment drawing that's being replaced in the engineering
21	change order, correct?
22	A. That's correct.
23	Q. And this, in fact, then is the deck weldment that does not
24	have the front flow control baffle, correct?
25	A. That's correct.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 73 of 282 - Page ID # 23137

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	Q. Now, if you'd go back to Exhibit 36, what's the number
2	that is being that is replacing this deck design?
3	A. Isn't that the number we just read here?
4	Q. No, the I'm looking for what replaced this deck design.
5	What what was this what was the updated design reflected
6	in the engineering change form?
7	Mr. Wenzel, if you go back to Exhibit 36.
8	A. Yeah, I'm looking right at it.
9	Q. I think you'll see that the one we've looked at is being
10	replaced by another cutter deck weldment?
11	A. Yes.
12	Q. And what's the cutter deck weldment that is replacing this
13	one?
14	A. Says 1545165 has front rings.
15	Q. Right. So let's go ahead and turn to Exhibit 34.
16	MR. VANDENBURGH: If it's not already been admitted,
17	I'd like to offer Exhibit 34.
18	THE COURT: Any objection?
19	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
20	THE COURT: Exhibit 34's received.
21	MR. VANDENBURGH: We could publish that.
22	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
23	Q. So this is showing the cutter deck weldment that is coming
24	into play, that's going to replace the first one that we saw,
25	correct?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 74 of 282 - Page ID # 23138

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

r	
1	A. Correct.
2	Q. And this is the cutter deck weldment that has the front
3	flow control baffle?
4	A. Yes, it is.
5	MR. VANDENBURGH: Now, I would like to go back to the
6	engineering change form and offer that into evidence.
7	MR. WOLF: No objection.
8	THE COURT: 36 is received.
9	MR. VANDENBURGH: And I'd like to publish it for the
10	jury.
11	THE COURT: You may.
12	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
13	Q. So if we look about a third of the way down, there's an
14	indication of what the reason for the change was, isn't there?
15	A. Yes. Says to improve cut quality.
16	Q. Okay. So Ferris from the very outset instituted this
17	front flow control baffle for the purpose of improving cut
18	quality. Agreed?
19	A. Agreed.
20	Q. Now, what was your position at the at this time in
21	1997?
22	A. I was in charge of manufacturing.
23	Q. And if we look down on the lower left-hand side there's a
24	list of people who have to sign off on this change. Do you see
25	that?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 75 of 282 - Page ID # 23139

1078

1	A. Yes, I do.		
2	Q. Are your initials down there?		
3	A. Yes, they are.		
4	Q. So you knew in 1997 that the reas	son for this new baffle	
5	was to improve cut quality?		
6	A. Well, I I signed the document,	so	
7	Q. Well, you're in charge of manufac	cturing	
8	A. Yes.		
9	Q at this point?		
10	A. Yes.		
11	Q. So you also have you're respon	nsible for instituting	
12	this change into commercial products,	aren't you?	
13	A. Absolutely right.		
14	Q. Okay. So you weren't oblivious t	to this change in the	
15	Briggs mower deck. I should say Ferris.		
16	A. No, I generally sign off so that	I agree I can manufacture	
17	what's been designed.		
18	Q. Now, will you also agree with me	that Exhibit 34	
19	MR. VANDENBURGH: Put that b	back up.	
20	Split-screen it.		
21	Exhibit 9.		
22	If you could I'm putting back	up Exhibit 9. If I could	
23	publish it?		
24	THE COURT: Yes, you may.		
25	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:		

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 76 of 282 - Page ID # 23140

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	Q. Mr. Wenzel, we've seen this Exmark brochure many times,
2	haven't we?
3	A. Yes, we have.
4	Q. And right there on the cover is the Lazer Z mower that you
5	remember seeing in 1996, correct?
6	A. Looks like it, yes.
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: And let's turn to the second page
8	of that document.
9	We blow up the picture down there at the bottom.
10	Put that alongside the make it small enough that we can
11	see it next to the drawing.
12	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
13	Q. You'll agree with me, won't you, that the shape of the
14	front flow control baffle that was added by Ferris in 1997 is
15	very similar to the shape of the baffle in the mower that
16	Ferris bought in 1996?
17	A. I would agree with that.
18	Q. But it's nonetheless your opinion that it's not even
19	likely that Mr. Baumbach copied in this case?
20	A. I said yes, that's what I said.
21	Q. You don't think it's likely.
22	A. I said that it's possible.
23	Q. And I asked you whether you thought it was likely and you
24	said no.
25	A. The reason I said that is because I considered Dale to be

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 77 of 282 - Page ID # 23141

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

r	
1	an honest person and he wouldn't copy somebody's patented
2	design if I just don't think he would. That's why I said
3	that.
4	Q. Well, we're going to get into the issue of patented design
5	but you've already I think made the point in your direct that
6	at the time this was copied, it was copied so quickly that
7	Exmark's patent was still pending, it hadn't even issued at
8	that point.
9	A. That's correct.
10	Q. You remember that testimony?
11	A. Sure. Yeah.
12	Q. So there was no patent to copy but there was a design to
13	copy, wasn't there?
14	A. Yes.
15	Q. Okay. And at this point in time, as at least you know
16	now, that Exmark's patent was pending at that time?
17	A. That's correct, yes.
18	Q. Let's talk about Mr. Baumbach because there's been
19	insinuations in this case that somehow Exmark is responsible
20	for the fact he's not here as a witness.
21	When is the last time that anyone at Briggs or Ferris
22	looked for Mr. Baumbach?
23	A. I think we said yesterday in approximately the 2002 no,
24	I'm sorry, that's the last time we looked for him at Ferris.
25	Our counsel looked for him. Isn't that in evidence from

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 78 of 282 - Page ID # 23142

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

r	
1	yesterday? 2000 and
2	Q. If anybody said it, it was you, Mr. Wenzel.
3	A. Okay.
4	Q. But I want to put aside first your counsel. Let's talk
5	about just Ferris and Briggs.
6	A. Okay.
7	Q. And the last time that anybody at Ferris and Briggs looked
8	for Mr. Baumbach was 2002, correct?
9	A. That's correct, yes.
10	Q. So even after this lawsuit was filed and there was this
11	allegation of copying, nobody at Briggs made any effort to try
12	to find Mr. Baumbach, did they?
13	A. At at our company internally? No.
14	Q. Correct. Now let's talk about what your counsel did. Who
15	did that?
16	A. I I don't know who did that specifically.
17	Q. When did they do it?
18	A. I don't know the exact date either.
19	Q. What did they do?
20	A. I don't know exactly what they did.
21	MR. WOLF: Your Honor Your Honor, we're going to
22	get into privileged issues. We should have a sidebar about
23	what will and will not be waived because he's getting into work
24	product of lawyers and this is a much more significant
25	discussion than

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 79 of 282 - Page ID # 23143

1	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, I'm happy to join a
2	sidebar.
3	THE COURT: All right. Let's have a sidebar.
4	MR. WOLF: Or we can do it at the break.
5	THE COURT: Let's see what's going on.
6	(At sidebar)
7	THE COURT: All right. How far do you intend to go
8	on this issue?
9	MR. VANDENBURGH: I want to show I think that what
10	we're going to show is that he doesn't know anything about what
11	was allegedly done to find Mr. Baumbach. They made a big deal
12	about the fact that we didn't bring Mr. Baumbach to this case
13	and I need to show that they never tried.
14	THE COURT: Well all right. And your position,
15	Mr. Wolf, is?
16	MR. WOLF: In-house counsel is the one that looked.
17	We didn't go through any of this with the witness. And unless
18	we're going to
19	MR. VANDENBURGH: He got the
20	THE COURT: Just a minute. He just said that they
21	didn't do it, that their lawyers did it. And he's you're
22	saying he's confused in-house counsel with outside counsel?
23	MR. WOLF: Yes, Your Honor.
24	THE COURT: All right. When you took his deposition,
25	did he make any distinction?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 80 of 282 - Page ID # 23144

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	MR. VANDENBURGH: I don't think
2	THE COURT: You don't know.
3	MR. VANDENBURGH: This topic never came up. This was
4	a surprise to us yesterday when he testified.
5	THE COURT: Okay. Now you know.
6	But you you are asserting attorney-client privilege,
7	correct, for outside counsel or inside counsel or both?
8	MR. WOLF: We never got to this topic. I'd have to
9	talk to the client. This is new to me that he's going to
10	inquire the only point is if he wants to say do you
11	personally know, that's fine. But he wouldn't know, so I think
12	that's the point where we're crossing the line into
13	THE COURT: Yeah, but but you opened the door,
14	okay. You opened the door, not plaintiff's counsel. So now he
15	gets to inquire about about this issue.
16	And if he if the witness doesn't know, he can say he
17	doesn't know.
18	MR. WOLF: Okay. Okay.
19	THE COURT: And he can say what he doesn't know
20	about.
21	MR. WOLF: That's fine.
22	THE COURT: And so he so I'm overruling your
23	objection.
24	MR. WOLF: Okay. I mean, the one thing I would ask
25	to clarify, and maybe this will be relevant, maybe not, is the

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 81 of 282 - Page ID # 23145

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

1	distinction between in-house counsel and outside counsel. You
2	know, that's
3	MR. VANDENBURGH: You can bring that out in redirect.
4	MR. WOLF: That's fine. That's fine. Okay.
5	THE COURT: Okay.
6	MR. WOLF: All right.
7	(In open court)
8	MR. VANDENBURGH: I've forgotten all the questions
9	that I asked
10	THE COURT: Wait.
11	MR. VANDENBURGH: Oh.
12	THE COURT: You have to wait for my court reporter to
13	be prepared to proceed. Are you prepared, Ms. DeVetter?
14	All right. You may proceed, counsel.
15	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
16	Q. I think I'm going to repeat a couple of questions. Do you
17	know who investigated Mr. Baumbach's whereabouts?
18	A. I do not.
19	Q. And do you know when it was done, even the year?
20	A. I do not.
21	Q. Do you know how much effort was put into it?
22	A. I don't have specific knowledge of that, no.
23	Q. So as far as you know, perhaps all they did was pull out
24	the Munnsville phone book, not find the name Baumbach, and then
25	stop?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 82 of 282 - Page ID # 23146

	-	-	_
1	Ω	0	5
1	U	0	J

1		
1	A.	I wouldn't think that to be the case.
2	Q.	But you don't know one way or the other?
3	Α.	I know this is a very serious matter and I trust our legal
4	coun	sel to do the appropriate thing.
5	Q.	Do you know whether they hired a private investigator?
6	A.	I do not.
7	Q.	Now, we've heard testimony that Exmark hired a private
8	inve	stigator to find Mr. Baumbach; is that correct?
9	A.	That's correct.
10	Q.	And you were shown a declaration yesterday referring to
11	that	information, correct?
12	A.	I was.
13	Q.	I'd like you to turn to Tab A of the binder that your
14	coun	sel gave you yesterday.
15	A.	Okay.
16	Q.	And you told the jury certain information from this
17	docu	ment that you thought was relevant to your view of the
18	case	, correct?
19	A.	I read this document, yes.
20	Q.	There's other information in this that you didn't talk
21	abou	t yesterday, isn't there?
22	Α.	Yes, I did not read the whole thing.
23	Q.	Okay. First of all, it reflects how long it took the
24	inve	stigator to find Mr. Baumbach, doesn't it?
25	Α.	Well, I didn't read the whole thing here. I just read

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 83 of 282 - Page ID # 23147

1086

1	what I was told to read.
2	Q. Why don't you look at paragraph 4.
3	A. Okay.
4	Q. Does it indicate how long it took the investigator to find
5	Mr. Baumbach?
6	A. It does.
7	Q. And how long did it take him?
8	A. 2.25 hours.
9	Q. And does the prior paragraph indicate what the
10	investigator used to find Mr. Baumbach?
11	A. Using a computer and a telephone.
12	Q. All right. So to be clear, this isn't like Magnum, PI,
13	had to go out on the road for a week looking for clues to hunt
14	down the elusive Mr. Baumbach, correct?
15	A. Doesn't appear so.
16	Q. Now, here's the other really important thing about this
17	document. When was it provided to Briggs? There's a date at
18	the top of this document that indicates when it was submitted
19	to the Court. Do you see that?
20	Very top of the document.
21	A. Very the very top? Okay. Oh, okay, I see it here,
22	where it says "filed"?
23	Q. Correct. What's that date?
24	A. 3-13-15.
25	Q. Okay. So Briggs has had this document for over six

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 84 of 282 - Page ID # 23148

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	months, correct?
2	A. Yes, looks like it.
3	Q. In that six-month period, has anybody at Briggs or its
4	counsel reached out to Mr. Baumbach?
5	A. Not to my knowledge.
6	Q. Now, this the other point I forgot to make in this
7	document is it includes his address, correct?
8	A. It does.
9	Q. So as of March 13th of this year, Briggs knew exactly
10	where Mr. Baumbach lived, didn't they?
11	A. Looks like it, yep.
12	Q. And Briggs did not reach out to him?
13	A. Not to my knowledge, no.
14	Q. Now, you know, don't you well, say this. What state
15	does Mr. Baumbach live in according to this document?
16	A. North Carolina.
17	Q. And you know that a witness from North Carolina cannot be
18	compelled to come to Nebraska for a trial, don't you?
19	MR. WOLF: Objection, Your Honor, deposition rules
20	are different.
21	THE COURT: Sustained.
22	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
23	Q. Let me ask you this: If Mr. Baumbach had, in fact, not
24	copied Exmark's product, don't you think he'd want to come to
25	Nebraska to clear his name?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 85 of 282 - Page ID # 23149

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	MR. WOLF: Objection, Your Honor.
2	THE COURT: It's speculation. Sustained.
3	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
4	Q. If Mr. Baumbach was willing to come to Nebraska for this
5	trial, would Briggs pay his airfare for him to come here?
6	A. I would think so.
7	Q. If Mr. Baumbach could get on that stand and deny copying,
8	don't you think he'd be here?
9	MR. WOLF: Objection, Your Honor.
10	THE COURT: To?
11	MR. WOLF: Rank speculation.
12	THE COURT: Sustained.
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: I think we understand the point.
14	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
15	Q. Now, I think we've heard that patents are very important
16	to Briggs, correct?
17	A. Yes.
18	Q. And and to the Ferris business before that, correct?
19	A. Yes.
20	Q. And we've also heard that you are an inventor?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. How many patents do you have?
23	A. I don't know for sure. Maybe three or four.
24	Q. And have you been involved in the process of obtaining
25	those patents?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 86 of 282 - Page ID # 23150

1	A. In a in a general way.
2	Q. And you've reviewed patents, correct?
3	A. In a general way.
4	Q. Now, you're also familiar, aren't you, with Briggs's
5	practice of marking its products with its patent numbers,
6	correct?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. And, in fact, you are in charge of deciding whether to
9	mark products with patent numbers, aren't you?
10	A. I am not.
11	Q. Do you know Mr. Laurin?
12	A. I do.
13	Q. He's going to be here tomorrow?
14	A. Um-hum.
15	Q. If he had testified that you are in charge of deciding
16	which products to mark, are you saying that he's just wrong?
17	A. No, but there the decision is made higher in a
18	different place than myself. I am advised by counsel which
19	products to mark or not. Mr. Laurin works for me, so I direct
20	him.
21	Q. And so you are personally involved in the process of
22	deciding which products to mark with which patents patent
23	numbers?
24	A. I'm I'm responsible for carrying out the order of
25	counsel, yes.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 87 of 282 - Page ID # 23151

i	
1	Q. And you put patent numbers on your product for the purpose
2	of putting your competitors on notice of your patent rights,
3	correct?
4	A. We presently do not mark products with patent numbers.
5	Q. But you have in the past?
6	A. We have in the past, yes.
7	Q. And the purpose in the past was to put your competitors on
8	notice regarding your patent rights, correct?
9	A. Yes.
10	MR. VANDENBURGH: Maybe just to show an example,
11	could we pull up Plaintiff's Exhibit 432.
12	Show it for the witness only.
13	MR. WOLF: There's no objection.
14	MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay. I believe there's not an
15	objection to 432.
16	THE COURT: There is but
17	MR. WOLF: Not withdrawn.
18	THE COURT: All right.
19	MR. WOLF: Okay.
20	THE COURT: You're moving for 432?
21	MR. VANDENBURGH: 432.
22	THE COURT: 432's received.
23	MR. VANDENBURGH: If we could publish that for the
24	jury?
25	THE COURT: Yes, you may.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 88 of 282 - Page ID # 23152

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	BY M	R. VANDENBURGH:
2	Q.	So is this a picture of a part of a Ferris mower?
3	Α.	Yes, it is.
4	Q.	And what part of the mower are we looking at here?
5	Α.	It looks like the front panel top panel of a
6	walk	-behind wide-area walk-behind mower.
7	Q.	And do we see there to the left an example of Briggs'
8	mark	ing its products with its patent numbers?
9	Α.	Yes. Yes.
10	Q.	Do you intend your patent numbers your patent notices
11	to b	e prominent?
12	Α.	I guess that's pretty prominent.
13	Q.	So the answer to my question's "yes"?
14	Α.	Yes.
15	Q.	And you expect the competitors will heed your patent
16	noti	ces and respect your patent rights?
17	A.	That's one thing, yes.
18	Q.	Now, you also know, don't you, that other companies mark
19	thei	r product their products with patent numbers, correct?
20	Α.	Correct.
21	Q.	And at least sometimes you personally have paid close
22	atte	ntion to patent marking stickers, correct?
23	Α.	Correct.
24	Q.	And over the years, you've actually obtained copies of
25	pate	nts that you learned of while looking at a patent marking

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 89 of 282 - Page ID # 23153

1	
1	sticker, correct?
2	A. That's correct.
3	Q. And the purpose of doing this type of investigation is to
4	avoid infringing somebody's patent, correct?
5	A. Correct.
6	Q. I'd like then to go into the patent the Exmark products
7	that Briggs and Ferris have owned over the years.
8	There have been at least five Exmark mowers located at the
9	Ferris facility in Upstate New York over the years, correct?
10	A. That's correct.
11	Q. And one, of course, is the 1996 deck that Mr. Baumbach and
12	Mr. Marshall and you all saw prior to development of the
13	infringing baffles in this case, correct?
14	A. That's correct.
15	Q. Okay. And I think we've already established that that one
16	was not marked with a patent number because the patent hadn't
17	issued yet, correct?
18	A. That's correct.
19	Q. Now, you know from your experience with patents that they
20	often take a while to actually issue as a patent, right?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. You had patents that have taken as much as three years to
23	get through the Patent Office, correct?
24	A. Yeah, could be.
25	Q. So if you copy a product right after it comes out, you

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 90 of 282 - Page ID # 23154

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	know that just looking for a patent on that day and concluding
2	there's no patent that day doesn't mean there's never going to
3	be a patent, right?
4	A. That would be correct.
5	Q. And I think you testified earlier today though that your
6	process, when you come up with a product, is just to look at
7	that day and never take another look backwards in the future,
8	right? That's your policy?
9	A. That was the policy at that time.
10	Q. Okay. Is that a flawed policy at that time, knowing that
11	it takes time for patents to issue?
12	A. Yes.
13	Q. Let's look at some of the mowers that Briggs has had that
14	are marked with Exmark's patent number.
15	We saw these, I believe, on the first or second day of
16	trial. I'd like to to start with Exhibit 46.
17	MR. VANDENBURGH: And I believe this is admitted and
18	I can publish it for the jury.
19	THE WITNESS: This is in your book now?
20	MR. VANDENBURGH: I believe it is.
21	THE WITNESS: Do I use the book or the screen here?
22	MR. VANDENBURGH: You can use either one you'd like.
23	THE WITNESS: Okay.
24	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
25	Q. And looking then at the first page of Exhibit 46, what are

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 91 of 282 - Page ID # 23155

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	we l	ooking at there?
2	A.	In the center?
3	Q.	Correct.
4	A.	That would be a an Exmark wide-area walk-behind mower.
5	Q.	And where is that mower located?
6	Α.	That was located in a storage barn in Munnsville.
7	Q.	This is located in "the barn"?
8	Α.	The barn, yes.
9	Q.	We heard from Mr. Marshall about a barn where the 1996
10	Exma	rk product was kept. Do you remember that testimony?
11	A.	I do.
12	Q.	And that's not the same barn as the one we're looking at
13	here	, correct?
14	Α.	No, that's correct.
15	Q.	You had a barn at both your previous facility and at your
16	curr	ent facility where you keep the competitive mowers that
17	you	
18	Α.	Yes.
19	Q.	you have? Okay. Now, this mower's pretty heavily
20	used	, isn't it?
21	Α.	Yes. We bought it with 1,000 hours on it.
22	Q.	Okay. And you continued to use it, correct?
23	Α.	Yeah, we probably put 50 hours on it.
24	Q.	Have you personally used that mower?
25	Α.	I have.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 92 of 282 - Page ID # 23156

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	MR. VANDENBURGH: If we could go to one of the
2	interior pictures, on page three.
3	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
4	Q. You heard the testimony from Mr. Busboom that this patent
5	sticker is right at the base of the mower as you're standing
6	behind it, correct?
7	A. That's correct.
8	Q. And so when you personally use this mower, you look down
9	at your feet, you would see this patent sticker, wouldn't you?
10	A. You would, yes.
11	Q. It's actually kind of interesting that that it seems to
12	be partially peeled off. Is that just a reflection of the
13	amount of use that this mower has had?
14	A. I would say so.
15	Q. And you do agree that on that list is the '863 patent
16	that's at issue in this case?
17	A. Yes. Looks like it's right in the center.
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: Then go to Exhibit 47.
19	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
20	Q. Again, is this another Exmark mower located in Briggs's
21	barn?
22	A. Yes.
23	Q. And did you get this one new or used?
24	A. I think we bought that one new.
25	Q. Okay. And have you also used that mower?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 93 of 282 - Page ID # 23157

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

г	
1	A. Yes.
2	Q. When you when you get onto a mower, do you get on from
3	only one side or is it sometimes either side depending on the
4	day?
5	A. We're used to getting on from if you're seated in the
6	operator's seat, it'd be your left side.
7	Q. Okay. So the patent marking sticker on this point on
8	this particular mower is on the right side, correct?
9	A. Whatever you say I would agree with. I don't know
10	MR. VANDENBURGH: Well, let's go ahead and turn to
11	the one, two, three, four fifth picture.
12	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
13	Q. Do you see the patent marking sticker down there on the
14	in the middle right of the mower?
15	A. I do.
16	Q. Does anybody ever stand on that side of the mower?
17	A. I mean, standing by you mean or
18	Q. When people are looking at this mower, do they always
19	stand on the left side
20	A. Oh, okay.
21	Q or sometimes do they stand on the right side?
22	A. Well, you could stand on any side: front, back, around,
23	anywheres you want.
24	Q. And you buy these mowers to look at them, right, at least
25	in part?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 94 of 282 - Page ID # 23158

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	A. The primary reason that we buy these is to benchmark ou	r
2	suspension, how they ride, how they handle, against these	
3	mowers.	
4	Q. We're going to get to benchmarking.	
5	A. Okay.	
6	Q. But part of benchmarking is inspecting them, correct?	
7	A. Just in general.	
8	Q. In general from all sides of the mower?	
9	A. Sure.	
10	Q. Okay. Now, just to confirm, and we've seen this alread	У
11	if we go back two more pages in this slide, this deck.	
12	You'll agree that this product is also marked with the	
13	'863 patent in this case?	
14	A. I do. I agree.	
15	Q. And at the risk of belaboring this point, let's go ahea	d
16	and talk about Exhibit 48.	
17	And this is another Exmark mower that was located in yo	ur
18	barn at the time this lawsuit was brought?	
19	A. Yes, it is.	
20	Q. And you heard the testimony from Mr. Busboom that this	
21	product is also covered or marked with a patent number the	at
22	includes the patent-in-suit?	
23	A. I agree.	
24	Q. Okay.	
25	MR. WOLF: Counsel, apologies, but what is the Bate	es

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 95 of 282 - Page ID # 23159

1098

i	、 <u> </u>
1	list we just looked at?
2	MR. VANDENBURGH: Sorry?
3	MR. WOLF: I was just asking for an exhibit number,
4	sorry. I was just asking what the previous exhibit number was.
5	THE COURT: 47.
6	MR. WOLF: Thank you.
7	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
8	Q. There's at least one other Exmark mower that you've owned
9	over the years that we don't have pictures of, correct?
10	A. That's correct.
11	Q. Is that from around the 2001 time frame?
12	A. I think so. I'm not sure.
13	Q. Okay. We've talked about at least five. Are there
14	actually more Exmark mowers that you recall having over the
15	years than five?
16	A. You know, what could happen, we could have a a
17	demonstration day and salesmen might borrow one from a dealer
18	for a day for a demo where dealers come in and try products and
19	they bring them back. I mean, that's that's
20	Q. I'm talking about Exmark mowers that you've actually
21	purchased. Have you owned more than five Exmark mowers?
22	A. Boy, I is it possible we had a couple more? Sure.
23	Q. Now, did you hear Mr. Busboom testify that all of the ZTRs
24	and the wide-area walks that Exmark has made, at least the
25	commercial ones, have the baffles of this of this

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 96 of 282 - Page ID # 23160

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	patent-in-suit?
2	A. I did.
3	Q. And so you agree that all the mowers that we've seen the
4	pictures of, in fact, if you look underneath the deck, have the
5	patented flow control baffles?
6	A. I do agree.
7	Q. You've personally seen a patent sticker on a Exmark
8	product, haven't you?
9	A. I have.
10	Q. When was that?
11	A. I mean, you've got all the mowers there. I would have
12	you've proved that I've seen them all, so
13	Q. But I'm not talking I'm not talking just seeing the
14	mowers. You've seen the stickers, correct?
15	A. Yeah, I've seen the sticker, sure.
16	Q. You've looked at those stickers.
17	A. Sure. Sure. I wouldn't deny that I saw a sticker.
18	Q. And we've also heard that in the past you have, when
19	looking at a sticker, you've ordered a copy of a patent based
20	on looking at that, correct?
21	A. At sometimes in the past during our review process have
22	we? Yes.
23	Q. Now, you mentioned a review process. How many patents
24	might your attorney look at in the course of a review process?
25	A. Boy, I don't know for sure.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 97 of 282 - Page ID # 23161

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1		
1	Q.	Many dozens, don't you expect?
2	Α.	Yeah, sure.
3	Q.	So there was an inference that there was an awful lot of
4	patent	ts on the Exmark marking sticker. Do you remember when
5	Mr. Wo	olf said that early in the case?
6	Α.	He he may have said it. Don't remember for sure.
7	Q.	It wouldn't be it wouldn't be a large project for your
8	counse	el to look at all the patents on the Exmark marking
9	stick	er, would it?
10	Α.	On just Exmark?
11	Q.	Correct.
12	Α.	No.
13	Q.	Let's talk about competitive benchmark. I believe that
14	I have	e a definition of competitive benchmarking from you. It
15	refers	s to comparing the performance and features of
16	compe	titors' mowers to yours. Is that a fair definition?
17	Α.	Yes.
18	Q.	And we've heard the testimony that everybody does that in
19	the in	ndustry, correct?
20	Α.	Yes, we have.
21	Q.	You know that your competitors periodically buy your
22	mowers	s for the purpose of comparing performance and features?
23	Α.	Yes.
24	Q.	And we've heard testimony that Exmark does that
25	perio	dically. Did you hear that testimony?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 98 of 282 - Page ID # 23162

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	A. I did.
2	Q. But, in fact, isn't it true that Briggs does more than
3	competitive benchmarking with the Exmark mowers that it buys?
4	Isn't that true?
5	A. You want to give me a little more description so I know
6	what I'm agreeing to?
7	Q. Well, you'll agree that Briggs uses its Exmark mowers to
8	help it solve problems with its mowers, correct?
9	A. Solve problems?
10	Q. Do you not understand what "solve problems" means?
11	A. Not in the context that you're asking me, I'm sorry.
12	Q. Okay. You have problems with your mowers sometimes,
13	right? Things don't work perfectly?
14	A. Sure, everybody does.
15	Q. And in that context, isn't it true that Briggs uses the
16	Exmark mowers that it has to help it solve some of those
17	problems?
18	A. Okay. I see what you're saying. So in other words if we
19	had a front wheel bearing that was failing regularly on our
20	mower and we'd heard we we polled some Exmark dealers and
21	they said we don't have any problem with that, would we look at
22	that? Sure we could look at that.
23	Q. You might actually disassemble an Exmark mower in order to
24	do that, correct?
25	A. Yes.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 99 of 282 - Page ID # 23163

1102

1	Q. Let's look at some of these examples of you solving
2	problems using your Exmark mowers.
3	Now, let's start with Exhibit 454.
4	MR. VANDENBURGH: Let's not publish it to the jury
5	but I want to show it to the witness.
6	(Mr. Winkels conferred with Mr. Vandenburgh.)
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: Oh, that's right, we can't put it
8	up on
9	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
10	Q. Can you just turn in your binder to 454?
11	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
12	Q. Exhibit 454 is an email from Marvin Butler to Bob Laurin,
13	correct?
14	A. Just give me just a half a second here. Keep up with you
15	here.
16	From Marv Butler to Bob Laurin, yes.
17	Q. Yeah. And the date of this email is that it was sent on
18	July 23rd, 2003?
19	A. Yes.
20	Q. And Mr. Marv Butler and Mr. Bob Laurin, are they both in
21	the engineering department at Briggs?
22	A. Marv is not exactly in the engineering. He's in the
23	product liability and safety and compliance area.
24	Q. Was that true in 2003?
25	A. I'm not sure if he we had that official of a separation

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 100 of 282 - Page ID # 23164

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

1	there. That was his specialty.
2	Q. Mr. Laurin is in the engineering department at Briggs?
3	A. Mr. Laurin is, yes.
4	Q. Yes.
5	A. Yes.
6	Q. And does Briggs maintain emails like this in the ordinary
7	course of its business?
8	A. I believe they stay on the computer, yeah, they're
9	Q. Okay.
10	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'd like to offer Exhibit 454.
11	MR. WOLF: No objection, Your Honor.
12	THE COURT: 454's received.
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: If we could publish that for the
14	jury?
15	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
16	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
17	Q. So in the underlying email there
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: If we can blow up the middle
19	portion. Yeah.
20	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
21	Q. Mr. Butler is describing a problem with a with a lock
22	washer, correct?
23	A. Yes, he is.
24	Q. And one of the ways he wants to try to solve that problem
25	is to have R&D disassemble the Exmark and learn more about

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 101 of 282 - Page ID # 23165

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

their design. Do you see that?	
A. Talks about insufficient bolt torque.	
Q. Okay. But, at least as part of the solution to this	
problem, he wants R&D to disassemble the Exmark and learn more	
about their design. Do you agree?	
A. He wants them to disassemble, take the wheel off, yes.	
Q. Okay. Let's look at some other examples. Let's go to	
Exhibit 461. Again, if you could go to that tab in your	
binder.	
MR. WOLF: To skip a step, Your Honor, we'll withdraw	
our objection.	
THE COURT: All right. Are you moving to admit	
MR. VANDENBURGH: Move to admit 461.	
THE COURT: 461's received.	
MR. VANDENBURGH: Publish this for the jury?	
THE COURT: Yes, you may.	
BY MR. VANDENBURGH:	
Q. In this instance	
MR. VANDENBURGH: Again, if we pull up the underlying	
email.	
BY MR. VANDENBURGH:	
Q. We're looking at an email from Mr. Butler to Mr. Terry	
Schaal copying Bob Laurin. I take it, Mr. Schaal, was he a	
Ferris or Briggs' employee?	

Yes, he was. Α.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 102 of 282 - Page ID # 23166

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

18

19

20

21

Q. Okay. And in this case, does this indicate there's a		
muffler guard project going on?		
A. Yeah, something about a muffler guard, yes.		
Q. Okay. And as part of that, does it indicate that they		
took photos of the Exmark muffler guard?		
A. Yes.		
Q. And you agree that that was there was an intent to look		
at Exmark's product and and learn what you could in terms of		
developing your own muffler guard?		
A. Something to that effect.		
Q. You didn't copy Exmark's muffler guard, right?		
A. I don't believe so.		
Q. Okay. Just like you say that it's not likely that you		
copied the flow control baffles in this case, correct?		
A. That's what we've said, yes.		
Q. All right. Let's keep going on some of these other		
examples.		
MR. VANDENBURGH: Pull up Exhibit 453.		
A. 453?		
BY MR. VANDENBURGH:		
Q. Yeah.		

22	MR. VANDENBURGH: And Mr. Wolf, can we speed this up?
23	MR. WOLF: I'm all for shortening the day.
24	THE COURT: Any objection to it 453, Mr. Wolf?
25	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, I don't see any evidence the

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 103 of 282 - Page ID # 23167

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

1	witness was on this, but we'll withdraw anyway. He can ask
2	what he wants to ask.
3	THE COURT: So are you moving to introduce
4	MR. VANDENBURGH: Moving to admit 453.
5	THE COURT: Received.
6	MR. VANDENBURGH: If we could publish it for the
7	jury?
8	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
9	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
10	Q. What's the problem with Ferris mowers that's at issue
11	here?
12	A. Looks like there's some sort of a switch.
13	Q. So you're having problems with your switch with your
14	switches on your mowers?
15	A. That's what it says.
16	MR. VANDENBURGH: And if we highlight the top three
17	lines of the top email.
18	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
19	Q. The solution was to get a switch from an Exmark machine
20	ASAP. Is that correct?
21	A. That's what it says, yes. Yep.
22	Q. So again, another example of your using Exmark to solve
23	problems with your mowers?
24	A. Those switches are pretty common in the industry. There's
25	a couple of suppliers and Exmark mowers are handy and, sure,

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 104 of 282 - Page ID # 23168

г	
1	they would have looked at that. There's
2	Q. But you'll agree it's more than, in these instances, just
3	what you define as competitive benchmarking?
4	A. Appears so, yes.
5	Q. Let's go to Exhibit 447.
6	Mr. Wenzel, you mentioned as an example looking at a at
7	a wheel spindle on an Exmark mower. Do you recall that?
8	A. The this previously here?
9	Q. No. When I first started asking you about problems, you
10	mentioned an example of a wheel spindle. Do you recall
11	A. Oh, yes, okay.
12	Q that testimony? Yeah.
13	A. Yes.
14	Q. Does Exhibit 447 relate to a wheel spindle examination in
15	an Exmark product?
16	A. It does, yes.
17	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'd like to offer Exhibit 447.
18	THE COURT: Any objection?
19	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
20	THE COURT: Received.
21	MR. VANDENBURGH: If we could publish that for the
22	jury.
23	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
24	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
25	Q. So if we just look at the first page, this is an email

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 105 of 282 - Page ID # 23169

г	
1	from Pete Jones at Ferris to Mr. Bob Laurin at Ferris, correct?
2	A. Yes.
3	Q. It indicates that the Exmark data is attached?
4	A. Yes.
5	Q. Then if we look turn to the next page, you see a fairly
6	detailed chart of it looks like a measurement analysis. Can
7	you can you explain what was done with this Exmark spindle?
8	A. Looks like it was closely examined.
9	Q. By you?
10	A. No, I don't think by me.
11	Q. By somebody at let me ask this question. Was this
12	was this data collected by somebody at Ferris or was it sent
13	outside for somebody else to do it?
14	A. I would think that it was done by someone at Ferris. I
15	guess I don't know that for sure, but I would think so.
16	Q. Do you have the ability to do these sort of analyses
17	in-house of an Exmark spindle?
18	A. Yes, all just basic measurements and things.
19	Q. And did this have anything to do whatsoever with trying to
20	improve Ferris's products?
21	A. Sure, in the way they were trying to solve a service
22	problem, yes.
23	Q. Let me go over one more example because it involves, I
24	believe, you personally. We you go to Exhibit 441 in your
25	binder.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 106 of 282 - Page ID # 23170

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

	, <u> </u>
1	MR. WOLF: Counsel, what I don't think we have
2	a 441.
3	MR. VANDENBURGH: I think this one got added.
4	MR. WOLF: Do you have an extra?
5	MR. VANDENBURGH: I don't.
6	MR. WOLF: The witness may not have it either then.
7	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
8	Q. Do you have a copy of 441 in your binder?
9	THE COURT: Mr
10	A. Yes, I do.
11	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
12	Q. Okay.
13	MR. WOLF: Just us then. Thank you.
14	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
15	Q. Can you tell me what this document is?
16	MR. WOLF: Here you go. Just put it up on the
17	screen. That's fine.
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: Doesn't sound like there's any
19	objection. Can I offer 441?
20	THE COURT: Mr. Wolf?
21	MR. WOLF: No objection, Your Honor. If he could
22	just put it on the screen because we don't have a copy.
23	THE COURT: 441 is received and you may publish it.
24	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
25	Q. So is this notes from a management team meeting on

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 107 of 282 - Page ID # 23171

1	August 11th, 2000?
2	A. Yes, it is.
3	Q. And it looks like the second list of the names going down
4	there, there's a reference to Phil. Is that you?
5	A. That's me.
6	Q. So does this discuss a report that you gave at this
7	management team meeting?
8	A. I was involved in it. I can't I don't know if I'm the
9	one that published it or not. I don't know if that matters or
10	not but
11	Q. Well, why is it under your name?
12	A. I don't know what you my name is on there. I don't
13	know if I I must not understand your question.
14	Q. I think I asked a poor question there.
15	The items that are under your name, are those things that
16	you're responsible for?
17	A. Yes.
18	Q. Okay. The third bullet point down, where it says "1000Z
19	prototype being used, comparing against Exmark version and
20	project is on schedule."
21	So at this point you were developing a 100Z [ $sic$ ]
22	prototype and comparing it against Exmark, correct?
23	A. A 1000Z, yes.
24	Q. I'm sorry, a 1000Z.
25	A. Yeah.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 108 of 282 - Page ID # 23172

1	Q. And were you trying to get the performance in the cutting
2	deck on that prototype up close to the level of the Exmark?
3	A. It just says comparing against Exmark. I'm I don't
4	know if there's a cutter deck element of it or if it's a whole
5	machine. I can't tell from this.
6	Q. So you don't recall trying to make improvements to the
7	cutter deck on that machine in order to get it close to the
8	performance of the Exmark?
9	A. I don't remember specifically.
10	Q. All right. Then let's go ahead and turn to the next one,
11	Exhibit 442.
12	MR. WOLF: Counsel, we seem to have a defective
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: No, no, it should be just these
14	two.
15	MR. WOLF: Oh, okay. No objection.
16	THE COURT: 442's received. And you may publish.
17	MR. WOLF: If we could just get a copy during lunch?
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay.
19	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
20	Q. So this is another notes from the management team meeting
21	less than a week later, correct?
22	A. Yes.
23	Q. And again we have a list of items that you brought to that
24	meeting under where it indicates Phil on the left-hand side,
25	correct?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 109 of 282 - Page ID # 23173

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

Г	
1	A. Yes. Yes.
2	Q. And again you discuss the progress on this 1000Z
3	prototype, don't you?
4	A. I did.
5	Q. And it says there: Discussed progress on 1000Z. Made
6	changes to deck to improve cut, very close to quality of Exmark
7	now. Still needs lots of detail work on other components of
8	the machine, but will be on schedule.
9	So this does indicate that at this point you are adjusting
10	the deck, based on this Exmark mower that you have, in order to
11	try to get the cut quality close to the Exmark, correct?
12	A. Yes, we were benchmarking with the Exmark, yes.
13	Q. Okay. And solving problems using your Exmark, correct?
14	A. Yes.
15	Q. So the thing that you say that everybody does in this
16	business, which is competitive benchmarking, you actually do
17	much more than that. You use your Exmark mowers to solve
18	problems. Correct?
19	A. Yes, as I believe everyone else does also.
20	Q. Mr. Wenzel, let's talk about product literature. As the
21	ordinary in the ordinary course of Ferris and then Briggs'
22	business, you maintain a competitive literature file in
23	Munnsville, don't you?
24	A. I believe that some of the folks in marketing keep some
25	literature, yes.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 110 of 282 - Page ID # 23174

1113

		EL - CLOSS (Valideliburgii) IIIS
1	Q.	And where do they get that literature?
2	A.	Could get it anywheres that's in the public, trade shows,
3	deal	ers.
4	Q.	Have you personally picked up competitive literature at
5	trad	e shows?
6	A.	I used to do it quite frequently, and with the since
7	the	Internet and things, do it not so frequently.
8	Q.	Did you also used to collect competitive literature
9	from	from dealers?
10	A.	Yeah, like I said, we could get get it anywheres.
11	Q.	And the purpose of getting this literature is to look at
12	it,	right?
13	A.	Oh, there's a lot of different things. Depends who's
14	look	ing at it.
15	Q.	I just want to make sure, you don't just pick them up and
16	shov	e them in a file and never, ever look at them, right?
17	A.	It's possible but not likely.
18	Q.	You personally have looked at competitive brochures over
19	the	years, correct?
20	A.	Sure I have, yes.
21	Q.	Page through them?
22	A.	Sure.
23	Q.	You've done that with Exmark brochures?
24	A.	I have.
25	Q.	And you've actually seen references to patented features

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 111 of 282 - Page ID # 23175

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	in Exmark brochures, haven't you?
2	A. I won't say that I haven't.
3	Q. Will you agree that you have?
4	A. The only reason I'm hesitating on your question is I'm
5	trying to think of an exact example and I quick one doesn't
6	come to mind.
7	Q. We've been through this process before, but you've had
8	your deposition taken in this case, correct, Mr. Wenzel?
9	A. Yes. Yes, I have.
10	Q. Okay. How many times have you had your deposition taken
11	in this case?
12	A. Three or four.
13	Q. Well, let's let's turn to the first of those, which was
14	taken on April 8th of 2011. It's towards the end of your
15	binder.
16	MR. WOLF: Page and line number, counsel?
17	MR. VANDENBURGH: Page 134. We're going to start at
18	line 16.
19	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, improper impeachment but I
20	have no problem with the jury seeing the question.
21	THE COURT: You may proceed, counsel.
22	MR. VANDENBURGH: Go ahead and publish that for the
23	jury.
24	And if we could blow up from 16 to the bottom of the page.
25	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 112 of 282 - Page ID # 23176

1	1	1	5
1	1	1	J

i	
1	Q. In your earlier testimony, you said you were asked: Do
2	you look to see whether a feature is indicated in a competitive
3	brochure as being a patented feature?
4	You answered: Yes.
5	Okay. Have you seen Exmark brochures that refer to
6	patented features?
7	Again: Yes.
8	Okay. And what features have you seen in Exmark brochures
9	as being patented?
10	I don't remember specifically, I just know I have noted
11	them from time to time.
12	A. Yes.
13	MR. WOLF: For completeness, Your Honor, I just
14	request the next two Q and A's.
15	THE COURT: Counsel.
16	MR. VANDENBURGH: I have no problem with that,
17	Your Honor.
18	Let's go down to the next page.
19	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
20	Q. Do you specifically recall ever seeing a reference to
21	patented flow control baffles?
22	And there you said no.
23	Then you were asked: To your knowledge has anyone at
24	Briggs & Stratton ever seen a reference to patented flow
25	control baffles in Exmark's brochures?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 113 of 282 - Page ID # 23177

1	1	1	6
		1	O

1	And after an objection you answered: Not to my knowledge.
2	A. That's correct.
3	Q. Okay. So let's test that knowledge.
4	Now, as part of this lawsuit, you know that we get to ask
5	for documents from Briggs's files, right?
6	A. Yes.
7	Q. And as part of that, you turned over to us some Exmark
8	brochures from your competitive literature file. Is that
9	correct?
10	A. From the file at our marketing department, yes.
11	Q. Okay. And that file includes brochures that you've
12	personally picked up, correct?
13	A. It could.
14	Q. Okay. And it includes brochures that you've personally
15	looked at, correct?
16	A. Well, I mean that's I don't know if I've looked at
17	everything that's in that file. That would be unfair. But to
18	say that I may have looked at some of those, sure.
19	Q. And certainly somebody at Briggs has looked at all of
20	those brochures, correct?
21	A. I I'll just agree with you just to just to go on to
22	the next question.
23	Q. All right. Well, let's go ahead and pull up or I'll
24	have you turn to Plaintiff's Exhibit 438, if you would.
25	Is this a brochure that came out of Briggs's files?

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 114 of 282 - Page ID # 23178

1 I'm sorry, it's just taking me a minute to get here. Α. 2 438. I go from 432 to 441. 3 THE COURT: You know, we're getting close enough to 4 the lunch break that we might just get the logistical issues 5 squared away during the lunch hour. 6 7 So if you'd compare the book to what you want to examine and be sure that Mr. Wolf has copies, that'll help us. 8 9 So -- but I think at this time, Mr. Vandenburgh, what 10 we're going to do is break for lunch. 11 So, ladies and gentlemen, let's break for lunch and let's 12 take an hour. So we're in recess. 13 14 (Jury out at 11:58 a.m.) 15 THE COURT: Mr. Wenzel, you can step down if you'd 16 like to. 17 So the only issue I want to take up with the lawyers is 18 the proposed instruction that I -- or proposed the answer, so 19 to speak, that I prepared on the myriad questions the jury's 20 had for us. 21 The bottom half of this you've already agreed to is 22 acceptable, as I understand it. 23 The top half is something that I came up with in -- during 24 lulls in the examination. 25 So the question is, I want you to look it over. Do --

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 115 of 282 - Page ID # 23179

1 Mr. Vandenburgh, have you had a chance to look at this? 2 MR. VANDENBURGH: Yes, and I'm going to let Mr. Winkels speak because I think we have a small modification 3 suggestion. 4 5 THE COURT: All right. Mr. Winkels. MR. WINKELS: Just one small modification, 6 7 Your Honor, just to be accurate. In the first -- I suppose the 8 second paragraph that starts, "This matter." 9 THE COURT: Correct. 10 MR. WINKELS: At the very end of the last sentence, 11 where it's talking about infringement, after the word 12 "infringement," we'd propose putting "infringement by mowers 13 having the redesigned front baffle." 14 The infringement is actually by the mower itself. So we'd 15 propose after "infringement" add the words "by mowers having," 16 and then you could get rid of --17 THE COURT: Okay, so just a second. 18 "Infringement of the redesigned front baffle," you want to 19 change that to -- is that what you want to change? 20 MR. WINKELS: Yes, Your Honor. 21 THE COURT: Okay. 22 MR. WINKELS: To say "infringement by mowers 23 having" --24 THE COURT: Okay. 25 MR. WINKELS: -- "the redesigned front baffle."

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 116 of 282 - Page ID # 23180

1 THE COURT: Okay. 2 All right. Anything else? MR. WINKELS: There is just one small -- before 3 willfulness in that sentence I think there needs to be an "of," 4 "issues of willfulness." 5 THE COURT: Okay. 6 7 MR. WINKELS: And that's it, Your Honor. 8 THE COURT: Oh, thank you. Okay. 9 All right. Mr. Wolf, are you -- did you have a chance to 10 review this? 11 MR. WOLF: I did, Your Honor. Two observations only. 12 First of all, on the second paragraph where a second full 13 sentence you say the negotiating process. 14 THE COURT: Correct. MR. WOLF: Just to avoid confusion with the 15 16 hypothetical negotiation, you might want to say the actual 17 negotiating process. 18 THE COURT: Okay. All right. All right. 19 MR. WOLF: And then, Your Honor, the sentence about 20 Scag is no longer true because we have introduced, it's been 21 admitted in evidence, the Scaq redesign. 22 THE COURT: Okay. Just a second. All right. And so 23 Mr. Winkels, do you have any objection if we cut this line 24 altogether? 25 MR. WINKELS: No, Your Honor.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 117 of 282 - Page ID # 23181

[	
1	THE COURT: So I'll take out okay. Anything else,
2	Mr. Wolf?
3	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
4	THE COURT: So do you have any objection to the edits
5	by Mr. Winkels?
6	MR. WOLF: I actually think yours was a little
7	clearer, but I have no objection to it.
8	THE COURT: Okay. And then Mr. Winkels, do you have
9	any objection to Mr. Wolf's addition?
10	MR. WINKELS: No, Your Honor.
11	THE COURT: So I'll delete that, then.
12	MR. WOLF: Thank you, Your Honor.
13	THE COURT: And I'll do that at the end of this
14	witness.
15	MR. WINKELS: Your Honor?
16	THE COURT: Yes.
17	MR. WINKELS: May I raise just one issue? During the
18	testimony of Mr. Wenzel, my colleague asked me about Exhibit 49
19	and I indicated that it was admitted, and that was my mistake,
20	Your Honor. It was admitted during the pretrial conference.
21	And there are no objections to it. I just wanted to be clear
22	throughout, I don't think Your Honor said it's it had been
23	received.
24	THE COURT: No, if if it was already admitted in
25	the pretrial conference, I'd like you to identify it because

1 for some reason I never got a copy of that and that's only 2 because I didn't ask for it, apparently, or somebody didn't put it in my book. 3 So if there's one that's been previously admitted, I'd 4 just like to know the number so I could keep track of what 5 we've done and if it's already been admitted, just say it's 6 7 already been admitted. That's not a problem. 8 MR. WINKELS: Yeah. It was my mistake. 9 THE COURT: That's -- well, it wouldn't have been a 10 mistake if I had the right list, but there you go. All right. 11 Mr. Wolf, did you want something? 12 MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor. 13 THE COURT: Okay. Well, we'll see you at one o'clock 14 then, ladies and gentlemen. 15 MR. WINKELS: Thank you. 16 (Recess taken at 12:03 p.m.) 17 (At 1:00 p.m.; with counsel and the parties' 18 representatives present; WITHOUT the jury:) 19 PHILIP WENZEL RESUMED THE WITNESS STAND 20 THE COURT: Please be seated. 21 (Jury in at 1:02 p.m.) 22 THE COURT: Please be seated, ladies and gentlemen. 23 Mr. Vandenburgh, you may continue your examination of the 24 witness. 25 MR. VANDENBURGH: Thank you, Your Honor.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 119 of 282 - Page ID # 23183

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	CROSS-EXAMINATION CONTINUED
2	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
3	Q. Mr. Wenzel, when we broke for lunch we were just starting
4	to go into the Exmark brochures that Briggs had in its
5	possession at the time this lawsuit was brought. And we were
6	starting with Exhibit 438.
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: I understand there's no objection
8	to 438 and if we could publish that for the jury.
9	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
10	MR. VANDENBURGH: Oh, and admit it. I'm sorry.
11	THE COURT: Just a second. 438 is received.
12	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
13	Q. Now, we've seen a color version of this many times in this
14	trial, correct?
15	A. Yes.
16	Q. This is the original 1995 brochure on Exmark's new
17	Lazer Z?
18	A. Yes.
19	Q. And there's a tab over there that indicates Louisville
20	1995. What does that suggest to you?
21	A. That it was first put on display in the literature in '95.
22	Q. Okay. Does it indicate to you that somebody at Ferris
23	picked it up from the Louisville trade show in 1995?
24	A. I think that would be reasonable to assume, sure.
25	Q. This lawsuit was brought in 2010 and you still had a copy

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 120 of 282 - Page ID # 23184

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	of this brochure from 15 years ago at the time suit was
2	brought?
3	A. Yeah, looks looks like it.
4	Q. Now, this brochure doesn't refer to patented flow control
5	baffles, does it?
6	A. That I've seen over the last couple of days.
7	Q. All right. And that's because at this point, Exmark's
8	patent was still pending so there was no patent issued yet.
9	A. That's correct.
10	Q. Right? Okay. So let's move ahead in time. Let's go to
11	443.
12	MR. VANDENBURGH: Again, Your Honor, I understand
13	there's no objection to it so I would offer it and ask that it
14	be published to the jury.
15	THE COURT: Correct?
16	MR. WOLF: No objection.
17	THE COURT: 443's received and may be published.
18	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
19	Q. Now, again, this is another brochure that came out of
20	Briggs's files in this case, correct?
21	A. I I'm not going to argue with you. I don't know that,
22	but it
23	Q. Well, let's just so it's clear
24	A. I would assume that's probably right.
25	MR. VANDENBURGH: Could we blow up the number in the

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 121 of 282 - Page ID # 23185

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

i	
1	lower right-hand corner?
2	We have a stipulation in this case, Your Honor, that we've
3	agreed we can read to the jury at any time. It was given to
4	the jury at the outset of trial. And it reads:
5	If a document is introduced at trial having a Bates number
6	beginning with BRIGGS, the document was in the possession,
7	custody or control of defendant Briggs.
8	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
9	Q. So is it your understanding that that number down there in
10	the corner is what we lawyers refer to as a Bates number?
11	A. I do now.
12	Q. Okay. And so based on the stipulation, you now understand
13	that this document was, in fact, in the possession, custody or
14	control of Briggs?
15	A. Yes. I have no intention of arguing with you on that.
16	Q. Okay. Just wanted to make make clear because we're
17	going to go through a number of these.
18	Now, do you recall I think we've seen a color brochure
19	of of this particular brochure as well during this trial.
20	Do you recall that?
21	A. I again, I don't want to argue with you. It's just
22	hard for me to say. I'll take your word for it, yeah.
23	Q. Okay. Well, we can go ahead and work off the
24	black-and-white copy because I think we can see what we need to
25	see.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 122 of 282 - Page ID # 23186

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

I		
1	If you can turn you have it there in your binder?	
2	A. Yes, I do.	
3	Q. Can you turn to the page that's got the the document	
4	control number ending in 698.	
5	MR. VANDENBURGH: And if we can highlight the the	
6	second bullet point down on the left side there.	
7	That's close enough.	
8	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:	
9	Q. So do you see the reference there to "Patented	
10	flow-control baffles that improve the quality of cut, reduce	
11	grass and leaf blowout and lessen horsepower requirements when	
12	mowing in heavy grass"?	
13	A. I do.	
14	Q. Now, you had this brochure in your possession at the time	
15	that you claim that you did not know about Exmark's patent,	
16	correct?	
17	A. That's true.	
18	Q. Let's turn there's a couple more instances in this. If	
19	we turn to pages 14 and 15 of the brochure.	
20	Pages 14 and 15 are specifically advertising Exmark's	
21	deck, correct?	
22	A. They are.	
23	Q. And on the left-hand side, you see the reference to	
24	patented flow control baffles?	
25	A. I do.	

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 123 of 282 - Page ID # 23187

r	-
1	Q. I think it's the same text so I won't take the time to
2	read it again.
3	But then on page 15, I think we'll see the same reference
4	as item B there.
5	Do you see the reference to patented flow-control baffles
6	there?
7	A. I do.
8	Q. So this brochure from 2001 that came from your files
9	refers three times to patented flow control baffles?
10	A. It does.
11	MR. VANDENBURGH: Let's go on to 2002. This is
12	Exhibit 445. Again, I don't believe there's an objection,
13	Your Honor.
14	MR. WOLF: No objection.
15	THE COURT: And that's Exhibit 2 say again.
16	MR. VANDENBURGH: 445.
17	THE COURT: 445.
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'd offer it and ask to publish it.
19	THE COURT: 445 is received. You may publish it.
20	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
21	Q. Again, looking at the document control number down on the
22	lower right, it's your understanding that this is a document
23	that came out of Briggs's files?
24	A. Yes.
25	Q. And if you'd turn to the last page, I believe there's a

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 124 of 282 - Page ID # 23188

1127

	_
1	copyright date on it. It's very poor on this I don't know
2	if you'll be able to see it.
3	I don't have a reference to the color brochure that
4	that we produced so I'm going to skip that for now.
5	I'm just going to have you again turn to pages 14 and 15
6	in the middle of the document.
7	A. Oh.
8	Q. Again, we have two pages relating to Exmark's cutting deck
9	there.
10	A. Yes. Yes.
11	Q. Again, on page 14 we see the reference over to the left to
12	patented flow control baffles?
13	A. Yes.
14	Q. And on the right, on page 15 we have another reference to
15	patented flow control baffles?
16	A. We do.
17	Q. Again, if you'll take my word for it that that is a 2002
18	brochure, this was during the time that you say that you did
19	not know about Exmark's '863 patent?
20	A. That's correct.
21	Q. In the last brochure we saw a specific reference to
22	patented flow control baffles in connection with a walk-behind
23	mower.
24	If you'll turn to page 19 of this brochure, I think you'll
25	see a reference there, specifically in connection with a

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 125 of 282 - Page ID # 23189

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

1	Lazer Z mower.
2	See the reference to full-floating UltraCut decks with
3	patented flow-control baffles are standard on every 52, 60,
4	or 72 Lazer Z?
5	A. I do.
6	Q. The next one's particularly interesting.
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: Can I I'd like to offer
8	Exhibit 430 and publish it to the jury.
9	THE COURT: Any objection?
10	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
11	THE COURT: 430's received.
12	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
13	Q. Now again, the document control number indicates that this
14	is a brochure that came out of Briggs's files, correct?
15	A. Yes.
16	Q. And this is a smaller document than the other ones we've
17	looked at, right? It's only two pages.
18	A. Yes.
19	Q. And is this two-page document focused specifically on
20	Exmark's deck?
21	A. Yes, it appears so.
22	Q. And are you familiar with Exmark's trade name for its
23	UltraCut deck mowers or its UltraCut decks?
24	A. I've heard UltraCut decks before, yes.
25	Q. Okay. You're familiar with that

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 126 of 282 - Page ID # 23190

1	A. Yes.
2	Q as being an Exmark deck?
3	A. Yes.
4	Q. Okay. And in this two-page document that was obtained by
5	Briggs, if you'd turn to the second page. You see there's a
6	description of the various features of this deck?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. And you'll see there on the second bullet point down, in
9	the middle, the reference to patented flow control baffles?
10	A. I do.
11	MR. VANDENBURGH: Now, I've got let's see, one,
12	two, three, four five more of these. And I'd like to get
13	them all admitted and have them confirmed that they are, in
14	fact, Exmark brochures that were in Briggs's possession.
15	So first I'd like to offer Exhibit 457.
16	MR. WOLF: No objection.
17	THE COURT: 457's received.
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: And can we publish that for the
19	jury?
20	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
21	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
22	Q. And Mr. Wenzel, can you confirm that that's an Exmark
23	brochure from Briggs's files?
24	A. Yes.
25	Q. And next go to 450.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 127 of 282 - Page ID # 23191

-	-	$\sim$	~
· 1	1	ੋਟ	()
_	_	3	υ

1	MR. VANDENBURGH: Same offer of the exhibit. Publish
2	to the jury.
3	MR. WOLF: No objection.
4	THE COURT: 450's received. You may publish.
5	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
6	Q. Again, this is the brochure from Briggs's files, an Exmark
7	brochure?
8	A. Yes, that's the number on the bottom.
9	Q. Now, because we had some trouble with some dates before,
10	I'm going to take the time on this one to turn to the last page
11	if I could.
12	(Mr. Vandenburgh conferred with Mr. Mayleben.)
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: And if we could pull up the
14	copyright date at the bottom of that.
15	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
16	Q. Do you see that this has a date of 2003 at the bottom of
17	it?
18	A. Oh, okay. Yes.
19	Q. And that is the time period during which you claim that
20	you did not know about Exmark's '863 patent?
21	A. That's correct.
22	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, just for logistically, this
23	appears to be a different document.
24	Can you just
25	THE COURT: Different than what?

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 128 of 282 - Page ID # 23192

1	MR. WOLF: This 450 doesn't match the 450 that's on
2	the screen. But it's probably close enough for government
3	work.
4	THE COURT: All right.
5	(Mr. Wolf and Mr. Vandenburgh conferred.)
6	THE COURT: It looks like there's more than one
7	copyright 2003. And maybe somebody made copies of it.
8	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, I don't want to belabor it.
9	Unless we find something, we'll just for the moment it's
10	different but I suspect it doesn't matter.
11	THE COURT: Okay. Thank you.
12	You may continue, Mr. Vandenburgh.
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'd like to offer Exhibit 464.
14	THE COURT: Any objection to 464?
15	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
16	MR. VANDENBURGH: Publish this for the jury?
17	THE COURT: 464's received and it may be published.
18	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
19	Q. Again, is this an Exmark brochure in Briggs's possession?
20	A. Yep. It's got the number.
21	Q. And if we go to the last page, we can see that this is a
22	brochure from 2005?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. And that's also the time period during which you say you
25	were not aware of the '863 patent?

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 129 of 282 - Page ID # 23193

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

1	A. That's correct.
2	Q. And the next brochure is Exhibit 466.
3	THE COURT: Any objection?
4	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
5	THE COURT: 466 is received. You may publish it.
6	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
7	Q. That's another brochure that was in Briggs's possession.
8	It's an Exmark brochure.
9	A. Yes.
10	Q. And if we go to the last page, do we see that that's from
11	2006?
12	A. Yes.
13	Q. It's still the time frame that you say that you were not
14	aware of Exmark's '863 patent?
15	A. It is.
16	Q. I'd like to go to 471.
17	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'd like to offer 471 and publish
18	to the jury.
19	THE COURT: Any objection?
20	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
21	THE COURT: 471 is received. It may be published.
22	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
23	Q. Again, is this another brochure that was in Briggs's
24	possession?
25	A. I'll have to go to it's not in my book, but I'll look

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 130 of 282 - Page ID # 23194

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

1	at tl	he screen.
2	Q.	471?
3	Α.	Last tab here is 466 oh, here it is. Sorry. Sorry,
4	sorr	y. Okay.
5	Q.	This is another Exmark brochure
6	Α.	Yes.
7	Q.	that was in Briggs's possession?
8	Α.	Yes.
9	Q.	And we can see on the front cover that this is from 2008?
10	Α.	Yes.
11	Q.	And that's also the time period during which you say that
12	you t	were not aware of the '863 patent?
13	Α.	That's correct.
14	Q.	One more. Exhibit 474.
15		MR. VANDENBURGH: I would offer that exhibit.
16		MR. WOLF: No objection.
17		THE COURT: 474's received. It may be published.
18	BY MI	R. VANDENBURGH:
19	Q.	Is this an Exmark brochure that came out of Briggs's
20	files	s?
21	Α.	It's got the number, yes.
22	Q.	Okay. And this indicates a date of 2010?
23	Α.	Yes.
24	Q.	And that's the year that this lawsuit was brought,
25	corre	ect?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 131 of 282 - Page ID # 23195

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	A. That's correct.
2	Q. Now, for each of these exhibits and for the record I'll
3	go through them 474, 471, 466, 464, 457, and 450, I haven't
4	taken the time to go through and point out all the times that
5	patented flow control baffles appear in there, but will you
6	take my word for it that those words can be found in each of
7	those brochures?
8	A. I will, yes.
9	Q. And if there's any question about that, at some later date
10	the jury could look at that or the lawyers could look at that,
11	correct?
12	A. Sure, yes.
13	Q. If you wanted to know well, strike that.
14	Is it your experience that companies are generally proud
15	of their patented inventions?
16	A. Yes.
17	Q. And again, I think we've already heard that you've seen
18	reference to patented features in Exmark brochures. Didn't we
19	say that this morning?
20	A. I said I I looked through the brochures, flipped
21	through them, sure.
22	Q. I think you also said that you have seen reference to the
23	word "patented" in an Exmark brochure and we took the time
24	A. I believe I did.
25	Q to look at your deposition?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 132 of 282 - Page ID # 23196

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

i	
1	A. I believe I did.
2	Q. Yeah, okay.
3	A. Yeah.
4	Q. That would be a good way, if you wanted to find out about
5	what features a company had patented, a good way to do that
6	would be to look at their brochures, right?
7	A. Sure. Yes.
8	Q. And you've done that in you recall in the past?
9	A. Yes. I didn't do it in an analytical way, but like we've
10	said, I've seen them, sure.
11	Q. And if you had looked at any of the brochures that we've
12	gone through over the last 15 minutes, you would have seen a
13	reference to patented flow control baffles, correct?
14	A. If I looked and read that whole page, yes.
15	Q. Let's talk about trade shows. You mentioned that trade
16	shows are important in this industry.
17	A. Yes, they are.
18	Q. Everybody in the industry attends them?
19	A. Yes.
20	Q. Everybody shows their products there?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. Everybody shows their mowers tipped up periodically?
23	A. Probably periodically everybody, yeah.
24	Q. And you I think you said you you attend multiple
25	trade shows per year.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 133 of 282 - Page ID # 23197

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

Г	
1	A. Yes, I said I attend one or two, yes, big ones.
2	Q. Did you attend multiple trade shows per year during the
3	time prior to filing this lawsuit when you say you didn't know
4	about the '863 patent?
5	A. Yes.
6	Q. And in the course of attending those trade shows, you saw
7	Exmark decks there, didn't you?
8	A. I did.
9	Q. And you saw Exmark decks tipped up where you could see the
10	flow control baffles?
11	A. I did.
12	Q. And you understand from the testimony that Exmark marks
13	all of its mowers with a patent number?
14	A. Yes, I do.
15	Q. So if you had wanted to know whether those baffles were
16	patented, you could have looked at that marking sticker,
17	couldn't you?
18	A. I could have, yes.
19	Q. Yeah. So and I wanted to go back and ask you about the
20	pictures of the mowers that we saw that were in Briggs's
21	possession. I just want to confirm that the three mowers we
22	looked at with the pictures, you had those in your possession
23	during the time that you say you didn't know about the '863
24	patent?
25	A. That's correct that's correct.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 134 of 282 - Page ID # 23198

1	
1	Q. And we saw a reference to the development work you were
2	doing back in the 2000 time frame where you were working on a
3	Ferris mower and using an Exmark mower to try to match its
4	quality of cut. Do you remember that testimony?
5	A. I do.
6	Q. And that was also during the time period that you say that
7	you did not know about the '863 patent.
8	A. That's correct.
9	Q. So here's my my ultimate question. I know that you say
10	that you didn't actually know about the patent, right?
11	A. That's correct, yes.
12	Q. When we hear about the mowers you had in your possession
13	that were marked, the brochures that you had in your possession
14	that said patented flow control baffles, the trade shows that
15	you attended where you saw Exmark mowers, when you look back in
16	hindsight, do you think you should have known about Exmark's
17	patent?
18	A. I wish I'd known, that's for sure.
19	Q. I understand that. Do you think you should have known?
20	A. I don't know. I don't know. Like I said, I I wish I
21	did. I wish that somebody or somebody told me or I saw it or
22	somebody else saw it there. You know, Exmark promoted, you
23	know, their quality of cut and they were known in the industry,
24	so to be honest with you, when you look through a brochure, you
25	don't even you didn't even look at that page. You just flip

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 135 of 282 - Page ID # 23199

1	over it. You walk through the display. You know, Exmark's got
2	a great cut. I mean, they say that everywhere. Your eyes just
3	kind of gloss over it, you walk by it, yeah, they've got a
4	great cut. I didn't look at the details. That's it, that's
5	Q. Most times when I'm questioning a witness I don't insist
6	on a yes or no answer but this is one of those times where I
7	have to have a yes or no answer.
8	A. I figured you would probably get to that.
9	Q. Yes or no, do you think you should have known about
10	Exmark's patents?
11	A. I would almost have to say yes.
12	Q. And is the reason you say yes because there were a lot of
13	indicators out there that Exmark had this patent?
14	A. Yes. Yeah. I mean, you've done a really good job here.
15	Q. Yeah, stickers on the mowers and the brochure references,
16	did those make it pretty obvious that there was patent issue
17	there?
18	A. They were well marked, yes. Well, I shouldn't say they
19	were marked, yes.
20	Q. And so that made it pretty obvious that there was a patent
21	issue?
22	A. I you know, I'm not going to go as far to say obvious.
23	Q. Okay.
24	A. I can't go at that had far.
25	Q. Okay. But you certainly agree that you should have known?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 136 of 282 - Page ID # 23200

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	A. I wish I had known. That's if you're asking me how to
2	describe it, you asked me to say yes to the other question. I
3	guess I
4	Q. Can you say yes a second time?
5	A. Yes, I will say a second time.
6	Q. I want to talk next about the Scag litigation. You spent
7	a lot of time yesterday trying to explain how it is that you
8	got your deposition taken in the Scag case but never found out
9	about the '863 patent.
10	And I kind of want to go over some of the testimony you
11	gave yesterday because you seem to have a pretty good
12	recollection of what happened back in 2002.
13	You testified, first of all, of course, about the details
14	of the questions that were asked at the deposition, right?
15	A. That's correct.
16	Q. A lot of that you can get from just looking at your
17	deposition.
18	A. Yes, I read the deposition three times.
19	Q. Yeah, okay. But you also testified about what happened
20	before the deposition. Do you remember that? I mean,
21	yesterday you testified.
22	A. Yes, yes.
23	Q. Yeah. And I think you testified that the initial contact
24	was by your patent attorney; is that right?
25	A. Yes.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 137 of 282 - Page ID # 23201

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	Q. And what was his name?
2	A. Jerry Fellows.
3	Q. And he told you during that initial call that it was a
4	patent case, right?
5	A. Yes.
6	Q. And he told you that the one party was Scag?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. And did he tell you at that call that that his firm
9	also represented Scag?
10	A. Yeah I don't know if he told me that. I knew that
11	or if I knew it previously. I'm not sure.
12	Q. You're saying that perhaps you knew prior to talking to
13	Mr. Fellows on that instance that Scag and Ferris shared law
14	firms?
15	A. Yes, I I don't know exactly when I became aware of
16	that, before or after.
17	Q. Did he also tell you that that Toro and Exmark were
18	involved in the case?
19	A. I think he just said Exmark.
20	Q. Okay. And did he indicate that Exmark was the one who
21	owned patents?
22	A. He may have.
23	Q. Was it in that conversation that you were told that you
24	he couldn't give you details about the case?
25	A. I asked him, I said, well, what's it about? He said I

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 138 of 282 - Page ID # 23202

1	can't give you details.
2	Q. And you recall that in the initial phone call?
3	A. Yes.
4	Q. Okay. And you testified, I believe, that shortly before
5	the deposition, perhaps the night before, you had a meeting
6	with a Mr. Marschall, also a lawyer for Scag?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. And you testified that at that meeting there was also a
9	discussion that that they couldn't tell you anything about
10	the case because of this conflict potential conflict between
11	the two companies. Is that right?
12	A. That's correct.
13	Q. Okay. And you testified that Mr. Marschall did not
14	represent you at the deposition, correct?
15	A. That's correct.
16	Q. And, in fact, I think you said several times yesterday
17	that you were not represented at the deposition?
18	A. Right. That was my understanding.
19	Q. Yeah, okay. You also testified about the breaks that
20	happened at the deposition and the fact that nothing was said
21	during the breaks. Do you remember that testimony yesterday?
22	A. Yes.
23	Q. And you have a recollection from 13 years later about what
24	was said at the breaks?
25	A. I know it's a standard procedure not to talk about

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 139 of 282 - Page ID # 23203

1142

i	
1	anything during the breaks, so
2	Q. Well, now I'm confused because before you said you
3	actually did remember what happened at the breaks.
4	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, mischaracterizing the
5	testimony. He hasn't
6	THE COURT: Sustained.
7	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
8	Q. Your Honor Mr. Wenzel, do you have a recollection of
9	the breaks in that deposition?
10	A. I guess I don't.
11	Q. And finally, you recalled talking to Mr. Fellows after the
12	deposition; is that right?
13	A. Yes. Yes, definitely.
14	Q. And you recall being unhappy with him at that
15	conversation?
16	A. Yes.
17	Q. All right. I want to test a little bit this recollection.
18	I want to start that by talking about your first deposition in
19	this case. Again, we we've already established that you
20	were deposed multiple times in this case, correct?
21	A. That's correct.
22	Q. And the first one of these depositions took place in
23	Munnsville, New York, didn't it? Or I guess I should say
24	Syracuse.
25	A. Okay.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 140 of 282 - Page ID # 23204

1	Q.	I think it was not
2	Α.	I was trying to picture Munnsville. I wasn't finding a
3	pict	ure in my mind.
4	Q.	I know I was in New York.
5	Α.	Yeah, okay. Yeah.
6	Q.	It was in the Syracuse area?
7	A.	Yes.
8	Q.	Do you recall that? And do you recall that I took your
9	depo	sition?
10	A.	I'm not going to forget that.
11	Q.	And you recall that I took your deposition?
12	A.	Oh, yeah, yeah.
13	Q.	And now, I wasn't involved in the Scag case, right? At
14	leas	t as far as you know.
15	Α.	No.
16	Q.	Okay. And at the first deposition in this case, I asked
17	you	whether you'd how many times you'd been deposed before.
18	Do y	ou remember that?
19	A.	I do.
20	Q.	And you mentioned that you'd been deposed twice.
21	A.	Yes.
22	Q.	Remember that?
23	A.	I do.
24	Q.	And you indicated that both were product liability cases?
25	Α.	That's correct.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 141 of 282 - Page ID # 23205

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

i	
1	Q. So you never mentioned, in response to my question, that
2	you had been deposed in the Scag case.
3	A. You're right, I did not remember it then.
4	Q. And that's because you'd forgotten it?
5	A. I had forgotten it, yes.
6	Q. Okay. But now you have a detailed recollection of events
7	before, during, and after that you just simply didn't remember
8	when I asked you about it at your deposition that was five
9	years ago?
10	A. That's correct. You want me to explain why?
11	Q. Please.
12	A. Okay. I I didn't remember it. I had these little
13	flashes of a hotel in Vernon. That doesn't oh, there.
14	Remember lawyers. I can't I don't picture my lawyer. Then
15	I pictured and there's a little flash in my memory of
16	standing next to our patent attorney in Fort Washington,
17	Wisconsin, looking underneath a walk-hind mower and it just
18	that's just flashing through my mind. You know, you're waiting
19	for an answer. So I said no.
20	And it was driving me crazy. Just there was these
21	inferences that this had all been exposed to me at some point.
22	And I was I was fearful to the point that I couldn't sleep
23	at night that I had somehow seen this patent and somehow didn't
24	recognize its importance and had somehow brought this all down
25	on our company.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 142 of 282 - Page ID # 23206

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	And our our patent or not our patent counsel, but
2	our counsel that represents us in this case, I said, guys, if I
3	gave a deposition, can I see it? Is that legally allowed?
4	Because this is driving me crazy. If I if I messed up so
5	bad that I saw this, I just need to know.
6	And that's when they gave me the copy of the deposition.
7	Well, once I started reading it, well, then it all came back to
8	me.
9	So I'm sorry it makes me look like a villain, but that's
10	the honest to God truth.
11	Q. Okay. Another possible explanation for it is that you
12	just didn't want to tell me about the Scag deposition at that
13	point
14	MR. WOLF: Objection, Your Honor.
15	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
16	Q isn't that possible?
17	A. No, absolutely not. Insulted by that.
18	THE COURT: You got the answer you wanted, Mr. Wolf.
19	MR. WOLF: I guess my witness can defend himself.
20	THE COURT: Well, you never know.
21	All right. You may continue, Mr. Vandenburgh.
22	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
23	Q. Now, you've testified very clearly that it was your
24	attorney, Mr. Fellows, who first contacted you regarding giving
25	a deposition in the Scag case, correct?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 143 of 282 - Page ID # 23207

1146

1	A. Yes.
2	Q. And in 2002, Mr. Fellows is the person who's
3	responsible who's in charge of monitoring competitor patents
4	for Ferris, right?
5	A. He's our he's our patent counsel, yes.
6	Q. And as part of that, he handles this clearance process
7	that you referred to?
8	A. Yes.
9	Q. Okay. Now, when you were deposed in the Scag case, you
10	didn't remember that it was Mr. Fellows Mr. Fellows who
11	contacted you first regarding that case, right?
12	A. That's correct, I didn't remember.
13	Q. Okay. So you have a clear recollection now, you know it
14	was Mr. Fellows?
15	A. I don't know who else I would have talked to. He's
16	he's our patent attorney. I don't know who else would have
17	contacted me.
18	Q. Roughly how long before or after that initial contact
19	were you deposed in the Scag case?
20	A. I oh, I don't I don't remember that well.
21	Q. Well, was it less than six months?
22	A. I think so.
23	Q. Would you be surprised if you indicated if in your
24	deposition that it was roughly two months, in your Scag
25	deposition?

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	A. No.
2	Q. Okay. So two months after you were contacted, you
3	couldn't remember whether it was Mr. Fellows who contacted you,
4	but here, 13 years later, you're sure it was Mr. Fellows; is
5	that right?
6	A. When you put it like that, I I that's the best of
7	my I mean, I don't know who else would have contacted me.
8	He was my patent guy. But I mean, if there's so I guess
9	I I guess I can't absolutely swear to you that I remember
10	perfectly that it was Mr. Fellows. I know it was from that
11	that firm. I assume it would be Mr. Fellows because he's
12	our our patent guy there. I don't I don't remember any
13	relationship with someone else.
14	Q. That goes to my next point, which is Mr. Marschall, who
15	was at the deposition asking questions, he was also your
16	lawyer, wasn't he?
17	A. I I don't I don't know.
18	Q. Okay. You have testified numerous times both yesterday
19	and today that you were not represented at the deposition,
20	correct?
21	A. That was my understanding.
22	Q. Okay. And, now, you met with Mr. Marschall both before
23	the deposition and he you said you sat with him during the
24	deposition, right?
25	A. Yes.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 145 of 282 - Page ID # 23209

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

r	
1	Q. Okay. And I want to get one of the questions exactly from
2	yesterday. And I'm quoting from page 979 of the transcript
3	where Mr. Wolf said:
4	And this is really important. Was Mr. Marschall your
5	lawyer or Scag's lawyer when you met with him?
6	And you answered: Scag's lawyer.
7	Do you remember that testimony yesterday?
8	A. Yes.
9	Q. Okay. Let's turn to your transcript of the Scag
10	testimony. I think it's the very last tab in your binder.
11	A. Yep.
12	Q. If you'd go to page 62.
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: And I'd like to show this,
14	Your Honor, while I read it. And it's starting at line 14.
15	THE COURT: You may. What page is it, counsel?
16	MR. VANDENBURGH: Page 62.
17	THE COURT: 14?
18	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
19	Q. And this is this is from your transcript, right?
20	You're the
21	A. Yes.
22	Q one testifying in this case?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. Okay. So at line 14 it says: Okay. Mr. Marschall has
25	referred several times to potential of attorney-client

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 146 of 282 - Page ID # 23210

1149

1	privileged issues. Is it your understanding that you're
2	represented by Mr. Marschall here today?
3	Answer: Yes.
4	Did I read that correctly?
5	A. I guess you did.
6	Q. So the testimony that you gave numerous times over the
7	last two days was incorrect on this point?
8	A. I believe you're right.
9	Q. You were, in fact, represented by counsel at that
10	deposition?
11	A. I believe you're right. I believe I was wrong. Didn't
12	feel like it, but
13	Q. So that goes to my final point on the deposition.
14	I believe you've testified that both of your lawyers,
15	Mr. Marschall and Mr. Fellows, refused to tell you about the
16	case, right?
17	A. That's correct. That's correct.
18	Q. But they they did give you some information, right?
19	They told you that it was a patent case?
20	A. Told me it was a patent case, yes.
21	Q. And they told you who the parties were, that it was Exmark
22	and Scag, right?
23	A. They did.
24	Q. And they told you that because that's public information
25	and they can give you that information, right?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 147 of 282 - Page ID # 23211

1150

г	
1	A. I I don't I guess so. You know better than I do,
2	sure.
3	Q. Yeah. They weren't breaching any confidentiality by
4	telling you who the parties were or the fact that it was a
5	patent case?
6	A. Probably not. They're pretty ethical guys, I would think.
7	Q. Okay. So let me ask you a very specific question. Did
8	you ever ask them what patents were involved in that lawsuit?
9	Did you ask, specifically identify the patents for me?
10	A. I did not.
11	Q. Did you want to know what the patents were in that case?
12	A. I wanted to know what's at issue, yes.
13	Q. Okay. And patents, you know, you're an inventor, they're
14	not secret, are they?
15	A. No, once they're published they're not secret; no, not at
16	all.
17	Q. We saw the Complaint yesterday that identified the patents
18	at issue in the Scag case. That's not a secret document, is
19	it?
20	A. Say that again.
21	Q. The Complaint that your counsel showed you yesterday that
22	identified the patents that were at issue in the Scag case, is
23	that Complaint a secret document?
24	A. I don't know.
25	Q. Okay. These are your two largest competitors in the

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 148 of 282 - Page ID # 23212

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	landscape mower business, correct, Scag and Exmark?
2	A. They are they're the biggest. They're the market
3	leaders, yes.
4	Q. Okay. And they're you know that they're locked in a
5	patent battle
6	A. Yes.
7	Q correct?
8	A. That's correct.
9	Q. Okay. And you know that it's Exmark's patents at issue,
10	right?
11	A. I do.
12	Q. And we've established earlier that you regularly look at
13	the Exmark mowers that you own to help you solve problems,
14	right?
15	A. Yes.
16	Q. Don't you think that a reasonable person would have asked
17	specifically what are those patents in that lawsuit?
18	A. I thought I did.
19	Q. You testified, I believe, about three minutes ago, that
20	you the one question you didn't ask your lawyers is what are
21	the patents at issue in the lawsuit. Are you now changing that
22	testimony?
23	A. No, I'm not trying to change my testimony.
24	Q. Okay.
25	A. I just didn't understand what you were saying. I if I

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 149 of 282 - Page ID # 23213

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	had realized that I I thought I was asking that. I didn't
2	realize if I'd asked the question technically different that I
3	could have gotten all the information that that I would have
4	loved to have had.
5	Q. Now, it sounds like you also know that your lawyers were
6	in a conflict situation, right?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. And they couldn't give you all the information that you
9	wanted because of the conflict situation?
10	A. That's correct.
11	Q. Right?
12	A. Yes.
13	Q. Doesn't it make that all the more important that you
14	figure out what patents are in that lawsuit so you can have an
15	independent lawyer do an analysis?
16	A. Does today.
17	Q. Again, looking back in hindsight, don't you think you
18	should have known about Exmark's '863 patent in 2002 during the
19	Scag litigation?
20	A. Not on that point, no.
21	Q. Not willing to agree with me on that?
22	A. No, I'm not willing to agree with you on that.
23	Q. Let's go to some lighter-hearted subject matter. Let's
24	talk about your iCD Cutting System.
25	A. Okay.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 150 of 282 - Page ID # 23214

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)	
------------------------------	--

1	1	5	2
1	1	$\mathcal{I}$	J

1	Q. So when did the iCD Cutting advertising campaign kick off?
2	A. Approximately 2008.
3	Q. Okay. And so before the iCD Cutting System campaign, you
4	were selling the mowers with the original baffle design that
5	had been found to infringe, correct?
6	A. That's correct.
7	Q. And you made some changes to the deck as part of the iCD
8	Cutting System, correct?
9	A. We did.
10	Q. But even those modifications aren't the ones that you
11	claim avoided infringement of the patent, right?
12	A. That's correct.
13	Q. So the ones that were sold, starting between 2008 and
14	2010, are still have the original baffle design, at least
15	one of those versions?
16	A. That's correct.
17	Q. Let's look at
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: If we could, pull up Exhibit 313.
19	I believe it's already been admitted.
20	THE WITNESS: 313.
21	MR. VANDENBURGH: And if we could just pull up the
22	deck and three points across the side, that would be great.
23	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
24	Q. So the primary emphasis of this advertisement is the deck
25	and then these three bullet points on the right that indicate

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 151 of 282 - Page ID # 23215

1154

1	Superior Cut Quality, Innovative Design, and Excellent
2	Discharge. Do you see that?
3	A. Well, I'm getting there.
4	Q. Okay.
5	MR. WOLF: Counsel, I think you gave the wrong
6	exhibit number.
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: Did I?
8	MR. WOLF: Or at least I don't have
9	MR. VANDENBURGH: I think I have it as I switched
10	it to 313 because that's already admitted. It's also 314.
11	MR. WOLF: It's not in our binders, but that's fine.
12	THE COURT: Three it's either 314 or 313, counsel?
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: Those two exhibits are essentially
14	the same document, Your Honor.
15	THE COURT: All right.
16	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, 314, not 313. Either way he
17	wants to do it.
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: Right, right. Let's stick with
19	313. It's already been admitted.
20	MR. WOLF: I don't have it, but no objection.
21	THE WITNESS: I don't have it either, but
22	MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay. Let's well, then let's go
23	ahead and move to 314 because then we're looking at the one
24	we've all got. It's actually a little clearer document too.
25	THE COURT: So is there any objection

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 152 of 282 - Page ID # 23216

1155

1	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
2	THE COURT: 313
3	MR. VANDENBURGH: Publish this for the jury?
4	THE COURT: 314's received and it may be published.
5	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
6	Q. So 314 is very similar to Exhibit 313, isn't it?
7	A. I don't have 313.
8	THE COURT: He doesn't have
9	MR. VANDENBURGH: Well, showed it on the screen a
10	minute ago. Sorry.
11	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
12	Q. Can you tell us what Exhibit 313 is?
13	A. It's part of an advertising no, a website. Is it our
14	website? Looks like it on the top. I
15	MR. VANDENBURGH: Can you take off the below print
16	now?
17	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
18	Q. You can see the whole document there?
19	A. Oh, okay. Yeah.
20	Q. That's an advertisement for your iCD Cutting System?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. Okay.
23	MR. VANDENBURGH: You can go ahead and blow that back
24	up.
25	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 153 of 282 - Page ID # 23217

1156

1	Q. So again, if we look on the left, we can see the original
2	baffle design there, correct?
3	A. You talking about this left or
4	Q. On the picture that's shown there, the underside of the
5	deck, that's the original baffle design that's been found to
6	infringe in this case, correct?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. An example of.
9	A. Yes.
10	Q. Okay. Now, I want to be clear, because there's been
11	testimony on this before, did the baffle design, the shape of
12	the baffles, change at all in connection with introducing the
13	iCD Cutting System?
14	A. Not not where in the area of the infringement, no.
15	Q. Okay. Now, there's a reference over there to Innovative
16	Design. Do you see that?
17	A. Yes.
18	Q. What features were innovative in this product?
19	A. I don't know if I can specifically call out innovative
20	there.
21	Q. You consider anything to be particularly innovative in
22	that design?
23	A. No, I would have to say it would not be.
24	Q. Now, there's a patented design shown in that picture,
25	right? It's Exmark's patent.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 154 of 282 - Page ID # 23218

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	A. That would be correct.
2	Q. Did you file any patent applications on this innovative
3	design?
4	A. We did not.
5	MR. VANDENBURGH: Let's blow up the text down below.
6	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
7	Q. Read the text there. It says: The new iCD Cutting System
8	is more than cutting edge, it provides you with a competitive
9	edge. Offering you unparalleled cut quality with redesigned
10	baffle chambers for superior airflow and optimum discharge.
11	Now, your counsel, I believe, sought some testimony from
12	you that indicated that "redesigned baffle chambers" didn't
13	actually refer to the baffles at all, correct?
14	A. Yes.
15	Q. And that's your testimony, that when it says "redesigned
16	baffle chambers," it's not actually talking about the chamber
17	defined by the baffles?
18	MR. WOLF: Objection, mischaracterizes.
19	THE COURT: It's cross-examination. Overruled.
20	A. Say that one more time just so I make sure how I answer
21	this here.
22	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
23	Q. Is it your testimony that when it says "redesigned baffle
24	chambers," it's not talking at all about the baffles and the
25	chamber defined by those baffles?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 155 of 282 - Page ID # 23219

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

	-
1	A. It is or it isn't?
2	Q. Why don't I just ask you. Is it
3	A. Oh, okay.
4	Q referring to the baffles and the chamber defined by
5	those baffles?
6	A. I would say so, yes.
7	Q. Is it your testimony that it's actually referring to the
8	blades?
9	A. They're within that chamber.
10	Q. So so then you believe that when it says "redesigned
11	baffle chambers" it's referring to the blades because those are
12	also inside that space?
13	A. Boy, it's just marketing people write this stuff that I
14	can it's amazing how this can come back to haunt you looking
15	at this stuff and how technical this is, so
16	Q. So can you answer my question?
17	A. I would I would say that the blades are within the
18	the baffle chamber but I wouldn't say they are the baffle
19	chamber.
20	Q. Okay. And I guess a more specific question would be when
21	will it says "redesigned baffle chambers," is that Briggs's way
22	of calling outs the blades?
23	A. No.
24	Q. No. And when it says "redesigned baffle chambers," it's
25	not calling outs the shape of the front wall, right?

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 156 of 282 - Page ID # 23220

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

ľ			
1	A. No.		
2	Q. And when it says "redesigned baffle chambers," it's not		
3	talking about the size of the discharge opening?		
4	A. Well, that's what it was, but maybe maybe not in the		
5	context of what we've been reviewing here, but that was the		
6	intention of it.		
7	Q. The only feature that's called out in this brochure is the		
8	redesigned baffle chambers, correct?		
9	A. Yes.		
10	Q. So let's go to a different exhibit that does call out some		
11	other features.		
12	MR. VANDENBURGH: Go to Exhibit 311.		
13	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:		
14	Q. Turn to that in your binder.		
15	MR. VANDENBURGH: Is there any objection to this one?		
16	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.		
17	THE COURT: 311's received.		
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: Like to offer that into evidence		
19	and publish to the jury.		
20	THE COURT: Yes, you may.		
21	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:		
22	Q. Now, this is an advertisement from Ferris's website,		
23	correct?		
24	A. Appears so, yes.		
25	Q. Now let's first focus on the on the top text.		

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 157 of 282 - Page ID # 23221

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

1	So on that top text, the first line is again similar to
2	what we saw before. It says, "The innovative iCD Cutting
3	System"
4	THE COURT: Slow down.
5	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
6	Q "allows for better airflow discharge and superior cut
7	quality."
8	Do you see that?
9	A. Yes, I do.
10	Q. Now, down below, we have a number of call-outs of
11	different features on that deck, right? Do you see that?
12	A. Yes.
13	Q. Okay. How many of them refer to baffle chamber design?
14	A. Can you pull that up just a little further?
15	There.
16	Q. Can you read that?
17	A. Looks like one.
18	Q. One.
19	A. Yeah.
20	Q. And can you read that text for us.
21	A. "Baffle chamber design increases air flow and reduces
22	clumping."
23	Q. And the lead line from that particular one points
24	specifically to the front baffle, correct?
25	A. Yes, it points to the baffle leading to the discharge.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 158 of 282 - Page ID # 23222

1	
1	Q. Okay. And it's the original front baffle that is part of
2	the original design that's already been found to infringe?
3	A. I don't I think the I think that part of isn't
4	that part of the baffle not part of the infringement?
5	Q. I'd rather not go into an entire claim reading,
6	Mr. Wenzel, but I certainly are you comfortable reading the
7	claims at issue in this case?
8	A. No, I'm just referring to everything that I've heard and
9	seen over here the last couple of days.
10	Q. And so you've heard the testimony that the claim requires
11	a front flow control baffle that extends from a location
12	adjacent one side of the deck to a location adjacent the other
13	side wall of the deck?
14	A. Yes.
15	Q. Okay. So it does in fact implicate the portion of the
16	flow control baffle that's indicated by that arrow, right?
17	A. Yes, of that portion, yeah.
18	Q. Okay.
19	A. Agree.
20	Q. Now, there's other call-outs in there that don't refer to
21	the baffle chamber design, right?
22	A. No, just says the "Extra wide chute opening discharge for
23	dispersal of grass," but it doesn't refer to that as a wide
24	wider baffle chamber opening.
25	Q. So one thing we can conclude then is that in the previous

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 159 of 282 - Page ID # 23223

	_		
1	exhibit where it refers to the baffle chamber design, that in		
2	fact what we're talking about are the baffles?		
3	A. Well, that wasn't the intention, but it it appears you		
4	can make a case for that.		
5	Q. The other features in this deck that are called out, one		
6	of them is the sloped nose on the front of the deck, right?		
7	A. Yes.		
8	Q. Now, that wasn't an innovative feature of a lawn mower		
9	deck, was it?		
10	A. It was new to us. I don't know as it's that innovative,		
11	no.		
12	Q. You've seen it on lots of other decks, haven't you?		
13	A. Sure.		
14	Q. Toro has a sloped nose?		
15	A. Scag.		
16	Q. Scag has a I was going to get there. But Toro has a		
17	sloped nose, right?		
18	A. Yes.		
19	Q. And Scag has a sloped nose?		
20	A. Yes.		
21	Q. We saw a picture of a Scag deck earlier today with a		
22	sloped nose?		
23	A. We did.		
24	Q. Okay. How about Marbain steel blades? Is Briggs the only		
25	company that sells Marbain steel blades?		

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 160 of 282 - Page ID # 23224

1	
1	A. We're not the only company, no.
2	Q. What is Marbain steel?
3	A. It's a specialty steel. It is innovative to blades but
4	not exclusive to I mean, other mower manufacturers can buy
5	it. Separates different blade companies.
6	Q. It's not a a differentiator for Briggs, right?
7	A. It's not a differentiator for Briggs, no.
8	Q. How about the extra wide discharge chute? Is this an
9	innovative feature?
10	A. Not in the way that I would define innovative, I guess,
11	no.
12	Q. Okay. And the last call-out is relates to the
13	spindles. Don't most mower manufacturers have access to the
14	same spindles?
15	A. No. I mean, we custom those are custom mold and
16	things.
17	Q. But they're specifically designed for your product but
18	they're designed by third parties, right?
19	A. No, we design them.
20	Q. Well, they are manufactured by third parties?
21	A. Manufactured by a third party, yes.
22	Q. And those third parties manufacture for other mower
23	manufacturers as well, right?
24	A. I don't know about that, that they would be I don't
25	think they are. I think that's a machining operation that

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 161 of 282 - Page ID # 23225

1164

1	makes those for us.
2	Q. Okay. Perhaps we'll come back to that one.
3	I want to talk next about other ways that you advertised
4	your iCD Cutting System. You actually had a display of an
5	actual metal deck that you sent out to dealers, correct?
6	A. We did.
7	Q. If you turn to Tab 37 in your binder.
8	Is that a photograph of one of these iCD displays?
9	A. I'm trying to get there. There's a lot of stuff in here.
10	I'm sure it probably is if you say so.
11	I'm there.
12	Q. Okay. Do you recognize that as a photograph depicting one
13	of your iCD displays that Briggs provided to dealers?
14	A. I believe it is.
15	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'd offer Exhibit 37, Your Honor.
16	THE COURT: Any objection?
17	MR. WOLF: No objection.
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: Publish that to the jury.
19	THE COURT: Exhibit 37's received. You may publish.
20	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
21	Q. You actually sold these to your dealers, didn't you?
22	A. I don't know if we sold them to them or gave them to them.
23	I I don't know that detail.
24	Q. Okay. In terms of calling out features in this display,
25	all we really have are the names the word iCD and three

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 162 of 282 - Page ID # 23226

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	yellow arrows, right?	
2	A. Yes.	
3	Q. And those three yellow arrows define the airflow that's	
4	created underneath this deck, correct, when the blades spin?	
5	A. I'm not exactly sure but they certainly could be.	
6	Q. Do you disagree with me on that? Do you think they might	
7	be something else?	
8	A. Well, it doesn't seem to make sense that it would be the	
9	direction of the blade, so I would say it's probably the	
10	direction that the grass is being discharged from the grass	
11	from the	
12	Q. I probably asked a poor question. That was actually what	
13	I was trying to get at. It's indicating how the grass moves	
14	inside this deck?	
15	A. Yes.	
16	Q. And that flow in this deck is controlled by that front	
17	flow control baffle, correct?	
18	A. Both the front and the rear.	
19	Q. Right. And that flow control baffle system is the	
20	original baffle design that's already been found to infringe in	
21	this case, correct?	
22	A. That's correct.	
23	Q. Now, after the suit was brought, you stopped showing the	
24	underside of your deck in your marketing materials relating to	
25	the iCD system, right?	

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 163 of 282 - Page ID # 23227

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

1	A. We did.		
2	Q. And can we see an example of that in Exhibit 327, if I'm		
3	not mistaken?		
4	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'd offer 327, Your Honor.		
5	MR. WOLF: No objection.		
6	THE COURT: 327 is received.		
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: Publish that for jury?		
8	THE COURT: Yes, you may.		
9	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:		
10	Q. So is this representative of how you advertise the iCD		
11	Cutting System after this lawsuit was brought?		
12	A. It is.		
13	Q. The baffles are still under there, aren't they?		
14	A. They are.		
15	Q. You didn't you didn't take those baffles out of there?		
16	A. No, didn't take them out.		
17	Q. Okay. You just stopped talking about them in your		
18	advertising?		
19	A. Yes.		
20	Q. I want to talk a bit about now we've heard about your		
21	suspension technology. You put great value on your suspension		
22	technology, don't you?		
23	A. We do.		
24	Q. It's a very important feature for Briggs in distinguishing		
25	its products from that of its competitors?		

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 164 of 282 - Page ID # 23228

1167

1	WENZ	EL - Cross (Vandenburgh) 1167
1	Α.	It is. We feel it is.
2	Q.	And you have patents on that system, right?
3	A.	We have many patents on the system.
4	Q.	And you want your competitors to respect those patents,
5	don '	t you?
6	Α.	Yes.
7	Q.	And you've brought suit when people have infringed those
8	pate	nts, correct?
9	Α.	Yes.
10	Q.	And just to be clear, when you brought that suit, did you
11	firs	t call the infringer up and say we'd like to give you a
12	lice	nse for \$10 a unit?
13	A.	On that particular or tell me who you're speaking to
14	exac	tly.
15	Q.	Well, let's tell me which one have there been more
16	than	one?
17	Α.	Yes.
18	Q.	You've filed multiple lawsuits?
19	Α.	No, we didn't file suit
20	Q.	Okay. How many have you filed suit on?
21	Α.	I think one.
22	Q.	Okay. And in that one, did you call the potential
23	infr	inger up ahead of time and offer them a license for \$10 a
24	unit	?
25	Α.	I did not.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 165 of 282 - Page ID # 23229

1	Q. Would Briggs have been happy to do that at that time?
2	A. To call them up or to offer or to sell
3	Q. Offer them a license for \$10 a unit?
4	A. We'd be willing to negotiate.
5	Q. And you'd be willing to negotiate and end up at \$10 a
6	unit?
7	A. I don't think it would be fair to to calculate what
8	that would be without any other factors at this point.
9	Q. So is the answer to my question "no"? You wouldn't be
10	willing to license for \$10 a unit?
11	A. Probably not, no.
12	Q. Now, the primary aspects of your suspension that you
13	market are the productivity and speed advantage it provides,
14	right?
15	A. That's yes.
16	Q. And that's because productivity is extremely important.
17	Correct?
18	A. Yes.
19	Q. Sorry.
20	A. I didn't know it was a question.
21	Q. Yeah.
22	A. Thought it was a statement.
23	Q. Now, have you heard the you heard the Exmark witnesses
24	say that having a good quality of cut is more important than
25	having than the ride of the mower? Did you hear our

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 166 of 282 - Page ID # 23230

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	
1	witnesses say that?
2	A. Yes, I did.
3	Q. Do you agree with that statement?
4	A. No.
5	Q. You don't?
6	A. No.
7	Q. Let me ask this carefully. Isn't it true that if there's
8	one thing that matters more than the ride, it's the cut? Do
9	you agree with that statement?
10	A. It's the you know, it's a quantitative you know,
11	just the cut in general is I don't I don't agree with
12	that. There's a level of acceptance and then there's an
13	exceptional cut.
14	Q. Do you tell your customers that if there's one thing that
15	matters more than the ride, it's the cut?
16	A. We do that?
17	Q. Do you do that? That's my question.
18	A. I don't believe so.
19	MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay. I'd like to show a an
20	excerpt of Exhibit 479. There hasn't been any objection to
21	that exhibit, Your Honor.
22	THE COURT: Are you moving are you moving to
23	MR. VANDENBURGH: Well, because we're going to show
24	it, I would like to move its admittance and have it played for
25	the jury.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 167 of 282 - Page ID # 23231

1	1	$\neg \cap$	
	1	10	

1	THE COURT: Any objection?
2	MR. WOLF: The only concern, Your Honor, it's an
3	excerpt of the video, so I don't know
4	THE COURT: How long is the video, counsel?
5	MR. VANDENBURGH: The video's about I think
6	three a little over three minutes. The excerpt that we have
7	is I think probably 20 seconds. We had the same issue come up
8	yesterday where there was an excerpt shown for the jury.
9	THE COURT: No, I don't have a problem with the
10	excerpt. I just wanted to have an idea of how long the video
11	is.
12	So you may play the excerpt and of course counsel for the
13	defendant can play the whole thing.
14	MR. WOLF: Okay.
15	THE COURT: Or the jury will be able to play the
16	whole thing
17	MR. WOLF: That's the only thing we want the whole
18	context, Your Honor.
19	THE COURT: The objection's overruled.
20	MR. WOLF: I'm sorry, I withdrew the objection.
21	THE COURT: Oh, okay.
22	MR. WOLF: Not that it matters, but I withdrew the
23	objection based on
24	THE COURT: Thank you.
25	MR. VANDENBURGH: Go ahead.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 168 of 282 - Page ID # 23232

1171

	_
1	(A video clip was played.)
2	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
3	Q. So you heard that indication, if there's one thing that's
4	more important than the ride, it's the cut?
5	A. It looks like those marketing folks are getting me in
6	trouble right and left here.
7	Q. So do you think your marketing people are wrong?
8	A. I do.
9	Q. Perhaps you need to get a new marketing department.
10	A. Perhaps.
11	Q. I want to go to Defendant's Exhibit 811, which was shown
12	to you yesterday.
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: I think it's already been admitted;
14	if we could publish it, Your Honor.
15	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
16	MR. VANDENBURGH: If you could blow up in the first
17	half.
18	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
19	Q. And I think you testified yesterday that this is typical
20	of the way that you advertise your suspension. Do you remember
21	that testimony?
22	A. Yes.
23	Q. Okay. So when we look on the left-hand side, you're
24	explaining how your independent suspension works, right?
25	A. Yes.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 169 of 282 - Page ID # 23233

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

	WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh) 11/2
1	Q. And then on the right side, you give the benefits of your
2	suspension. Correct?
3	A. Yes.
4	Q. Okay. And in order, it's productivity, speed, consistency
5	of cut, extended mower life, and then comfort. Correct?
6	A. That's correct.
7	Q. So relatively speaking, you would agree that productivity
8	is more important than comfort? For most people?
9	A. Well, if if if you I guess this was fair play
10	from yesterday. If if you take it that the order means the
11	order of importance, yes. But I wouldn't necessarily agree
12	with it, but it certainly was yesterday
13	Q. Well, certainly your counsel
14	A. I know.
15	Q. Your counsel when he was examining our witnesses suggested
16	the order mattered, correct?
17	A. Yeah, I get it.
18	Q. All right. I want to talk a bit about that speed one that
19	you indicated there.
20	I think if I understand testimony I've heard and what I've
21	read, the theory on speed is if the if the person riding on
22	the mower isn't bouncing around so much, they tend to go
23	faster, right?
24	A. Yes.
25	Q. Is that also the productivity advantage of the independent

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 170 of 282 - Page ID # 23234

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	suspension, that they drive faster and so they're more
2	productive?
3	A. They can drive faster longer, yes.
4	Q. Okay. Now, at some point, the speed of a mower when
5	you're cutting is limited by the ability of the deck, correct?
6	A. Sure. If the grass is really tall, sure.
7	Q. Okay.
8	A. Yeah.
9	Q. Or if it's really thick, you can drive perhaps let
10	me ask this question: Your mower allows and encourages people
11	to drive faster, but if they outdo what the deck can handle,
12	they're going to end up with a bad quality of cut. Agreed?
13	A. Yes.
14	Q. Okay. So if you paired your suspension up with a poor
15	cutting deck, you'd have a problem, right?
16	A. I I think you're you're kind of comparing apples and
17	oranges a little bit there.
18	Q. And I'm not trying to get at the issue of what's a poor
19	cut versus a good cut in this industry. I understand your
20	testimony regarding the how experts look at it versus
21	perhaps laymen. I'm not trying to get at that issue.
22	A. Yeah.
23	Q. But if you had a truly poor cutting deck that didn't work
24	well
25	A. Okay.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 171 of 282 - Page ID # 23235

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

Q and you teamed it up with something that was really
fast, that could be a problem, right?
A. Could be a problem, sure.
Q. Okay. And now, you do agree that or I think we
heard testimony that it's your view that prior to the iCD
Cutting System, Ferris was known as having a mediocre cutting
deck, at least by professional standards, correct?
A. I would agree with that.
Q. Would you say it was even below mediocre?
A. No.
Q. Okay. Mediocre?
A. Yeah.
Q. Okay. We established this morning that in 1997 the reason
that the front baffle was added to your mowers was to improve
quality of cut. Do you remember that?
A. Yes, that's what that said on that engineering change
notice.
Q. It's reasonable
A. Yep.
Q to assume that they weren't making that up, right?
A. Yes, absolutely.
Q. Okay. So doesn't that mean that if you removed the baffle
from the mower you were selling prior to the iCD Cutting
System, the quality of cut with that deck might drop from
mediocre to really, really subpar, right?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 172 of 282 - Page ID # 23236

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	A. I don't know how much it would drop but I think it's
2	reasonable to assume that it would drop, yes.
3	Q. Okay. And it might actually drop to the point where your
4	mowers weren't even able to compete at all in the marketplace
5	even with their suspension, correct?
6	A. I don't know if I could agree with that. We were selling
7	mowers prior to and after, so
8	Q. But but prior to having those baffles, you weren't
9	competing for very long, at least, with Exmark's mowers having
10	the '863 patented invention, right?
11	A. That's fair to say.
12	Q. So Exmark sort of raised the cutting level to the
13	cutting technology to a new level?
14	A. They definitely raised the cutting level, yeah, sure.
15	Q. And if you weren't able to somehow keep pace with that,
16	you were going to have a hard time selling lawn mowers, right?
17	A. To some degree, yes.
18	Q. I'd like to look at some more examples of the documents
19	that your counsel showed you relating to selling value. And if
20	I could have you turn in your tab in your book to Tab 366.
21	And if you could just start by identifying what
22	Exhibit 366 is.
23	A. This is a big book here.
24	MR. WOLF: Do you want him to use my book or yours?
25	MR. VANDENBURGH: Oh, he I think it's our book

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 173 of 282 - Page ID # 23237

	101			1 age 110 01 202	
WENZEI	_ – C	ross (V	andenburgh)		

	WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh) 1176
1	A. Okay. I got it.
2	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
3	Q. Yep.
4	A. 366.
5	Q. And what is that document?
6	A. It says Spring Ahead. Looks to be this Ferris Spring
7	Training 2002.
8	Q. This is a document that Ferris provides to its dealers?
9	A. Yeah.
10	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'd offer Exhibit 366, Your Honor.
11	THE COURT: Any objection?
12	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
13	THE COURT: 366 is received.
14	MR. VANDENBURGH: If I may publish to the jury?
15	THE COURT: And you may publish.
16	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
17	Q. Then I'd like to have you turn to the page that bears the
18	document control number ending in 38 or I'm sorry, 584.
19	MR. VANDENBURGH: Just generally blow that up.
20	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
21	Q. So this is another example of what we saw earlier this
22	morning, right?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. And Briggs provides a lot of these over the years,
25	correct?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 174 of 282 - Page ID # 23238

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1						
1	A. "These" meaning?					
2	Q. These these pages that show the value in dollar					
3	quantities that you get when you buy a Briggs mower.					
4	A. This was in for internal training for the salespeople,					
5	so not a brochure that we put out.					
6	Q. Understood. But you put these in a lot of your training					
7	materials, correct?					
8	A. We put them in training materials. I don't know how many.					
9	Q. Okay. And this is for the purpose of training dealers?					
10	A. First training salesmen and then training dealers, yes,					
11	correct.					
12	Q. And the dealers are the ones that interact with the					
13	customers, correct?					
14	A. Yes.					
15	Q. And so in part, this information is loading up the					
16	salespeople with things they can tell customers why they should					
17	buy a Ferris mower, correct?					
18	A. Yes.					
19	Q. And these are things they could say to justify the price					
20	of a Ferris mower, right?					
21	A. Yes.					
22	Q. So you went through, again, another one of these and					
23	well, I'll start by asking you this question. Are there any					
24	items on here that are only worth \$10?					
25	A. I don't see any.					

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 175 of 282 - Page ID # 23239

г	
1	Q. I thought it was interesting this morning when you were
2	going through the other one this is pretty close to a quote.
3	You got to the internal fuel reservoir and you said it's not
4	even enough to explain.
5	You remember saying that? Kind of passed that one by.
6	A. I did because I wasn't supposed to explain at all, so I
7	did say that, yes.
8	Q. Okay. But even an internal reserve reservoir you value at
9	\$25. Correct?
10	A. That's correct.
11	Q. And you know that in this case Briggs's damages expert
12	says that a reasonable royalty on Exmark's invention is \$10 a
13	mower, correct?
14	A. Yes. Of course, these are retail prices, not wholesale
15	prices or costs.
16	Q. Okay. How much is the markup between your sales price and
17	the end what's the markup between your sales price and what
18	the end user pays?
19	A. Probably about another 20 percent.
20	Q. So if we upped the \$10 per mower that Briggs's expert says
21	is appropriate in this case and said, okay, let's look at
22	that at the value to the end user, that'd be \$12?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. Okay. So the internal reserve reservoir is still worth
25	twice what your expert says the invention in this case is

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 176 of 282 - Page ID # 23240

1	worth. Correct?		
2	A. Yeah, that's what all these sales guys put this together.		
3	Q. Okay.		
4	A. Of course, you add everything up, yep.		
5	Q. Now, your sales guys say that an additional one horsepower		
6	is worth \$100. Do you see that at the bottom?		
7	A. Yes.		
8	Q. And did you hear testimony that among the many benefits of		
9	Mr. Busboom's invention is that it actually reduces horsepower		
10	demand on the engine?		
11	A. I did.		
12	Q. You may not agree with this, but let's assume that his		
13	invention reduced it by one horsepower. Based on that feature		
14	alone, even if it did nothing else, it'd be worth \$100,		
15	wouldn't it?		
16	A. No, because there's a perception by the customers		
17	that you know, if you had a 23-horsepower mower and you had		
18	a 24-horsepower mower, customers are going to have a hard time,		
19	but they're just going to buy the bigger one. They'll pay		
20	the \$100.		
21	Q. But in terms of the performance, it would be roughly the		
22	same, correct?		
23	A. I I couldn't verify that. That was I mean, that's		
24	something that I couldn't verify. Could be correct.		
25	Q. Yeah. You've there's a reference in there to the		

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 177 of 282 - Page ID # 23241

1			
1	foot-operated deck lift that's worth \$75. Do you see that?		
2	A. Yes, I do.		
3	Q. And I think you said that that's instead of having a		
4	hand-operated deck lift, correct?		
5	A. Yes.		
6	Q. Okay. So having a foot-operated deck lift, even at		
7	retail, is worth at least five times the invention of the '863		
8	patent, at least according to your expert?		
9	A. Our according		
10	Q. According to Briggs's expert who says it's \$10 a mower for		
11	the Busboom invention.		
12	A. Okay. I get the math, but the expert didn't put this		
13	together too, so		
14	Q. I understand but		
15	A. Yeah.		
16	Q if we compare what the expert did		
17	A. Sure.		
18	Q with how your inside people value features on your		
19	mowers, your people tell customers that a foot-operated deck		
20	lift is worth more than five times what your expert says the		
21	invention in this case is worth?		
22	A. That's what this says.		
23	Q. Let's finish at least for this document on the three		
24	references to the independent suspension.		
25	So if we look towards the middle there, we've got		

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 178 of 282 - Page ID # 23242

1181

1	two-wheeled front IS independent suspension is worth 250.		
2	Two-wheel rear IS independent suspension is worth 250.		
3	And four-wheel, front and rear, independent suspension is		
4	worth 350.		
5	Do you see that?		
6	A. I do.		
7	Q. Now, you heard the testimony, I expect, from Mr. Busboom		
8	and perhaps others that from Exmark's perspective, the		
9	invention at issue in this case is actually more valuable than		
10	independent suspension, correct? You heard the testimony?		
11	A. I heard the testimony, yes.		
12	Q. Okay.		
13	A. Yes.		
14	Q. And I take it you probably disagree with that.		
15	A. I do.		
16	Q. Okay. But if we just say it's a push and say the		
17	invention in this case is worth the same as the independent		
18	suspension, then we'd be right at around that \$250-a-mower that		
19	is Miss Bennis's opinion in this case, correct?		
20	A. I I don't agree with the on par, but your statement		
21	would be correct.		
22	Q. The numbers work out correct		
23	A. Yes.		
24	Q right?		
25	A. Yeah.		

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 179 of 282 - Page ID # 23243

1	1	Q	$\mathcal{O}$
т.	т.	Ο	

1	MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay. I'm going to go through one
2	more of these, Your Honor, and then perhaps take a break?
3	THE COURT: That would be fine.
4	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
5	Q. I'd like you next to go to Exhibit 391.
6	If you could turn to that in your binder, Mr. Wenzel, just
7	to identify what it is.
8	A. Do you want me to read what it says on the top?
9	Q. Please do.
10	A. "Welcome To Our 2007 Spring Tune-Up."
11	Q. So is this another example of training materials for your
12	salespeople and your dealers?
13	A. Appears to be.
14	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, I'd offer Exhibit 391.
15	THE COURT: Any objection?
16	MR. WOLF: No, Your Honor.
17	THE COURT: 391's received. You may publish.
18	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
19	Q. So let's get right to a page on the selling value.
20	MR. VANDENBURGH: If you could turn to the page
21	bearing Bates numbers ending in 248.
22	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
23	Q. Now have you gotten to that page yet?
24	A. Well, I'll just look on the screen here.
25	Q. Okay. The last exhibit we looked at I believe was from

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 180 of 282 - Page ID # 23244

```
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)
```

1	2002, correct?
2	A. Yes.
3	Q. The previous one. And now this one we're looking at is
4	five years later, it's 2007.
5	A. Yes. And this was created by one of our distributors.
6	Q. Okay.
7	THE COURT: Is it is this 2007?
8	MR. VANDENBURGH: I believe that was the date on the
9	front page.
10	THE COURT: Oh, it's the Ferris IS 2000. I'm reading
11	it wrong. Go ahead.
12	MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay.
13	THE COURT: Sorry, gentlemen.
14	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
15	Q. So according to this document, the four-way independent
16	suspension is now up to \$750 in value. Do you see that?
17	A. Yes, I do.
18	Q. So if again, if I ask you the the same question as
19	before, if we're willing to even equate the invention at issue
20	in this case with independent suspension, we put the value
21	at \$750, correct?
22	A. Yeah, sales comparison compared to a professional's
23	analysis, you are correct.
24	Q. And and Miss Bennis is a professional, right?
25	A. Yes.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 181 of 282 - Page ID # 23245

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	Q. And she's opined that roughly \$250 per lawn mower is a
2	reasonable royalty, correct?
3	A. That's what she testified.
4	Q. And that's roughly a third of what this sales document
5	says your independent suspension is worth. Correct?
6	A. That's correct.
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, could we take our
8	break?
9	THE COURT: Yes.
10	Ladies and gentlemen, we'll take our first afternoon
11	recess. Ten minutes.
12	We're in recess.
13	(Jury out and recess taken at 2:25 p.m.)
14	(At 2:35 p.m.; with counsel and the parties'
15	representatives present; WITHOUT the jury:)
16	PHILIP WENZEL RESUMED THE WITNESS STAND
17	THE COURT: Please be seated, ladies and gentlemen.
18	(Jury in at 2:37 p.m.)
19	THE COURT: Please be seated, ladies and gentlemen.
20	Mr. Vandenburgh, you may continue your examination of the
21	witness.
22	MR. VANDENBURGH: Thank you, Your Honor.
23	CROSS-EXAMINATION CONTINUED
24	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
25	Q. I want to ask you quickly about an issue that I am sure is

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 182 of 282 - Page ID # 23246

1 .	1 0	
	IХ	5

1	not v	very important in the case but we seem to be talking about
2	it an	nyway.
3		There is no company named Ferris anymore, is there?
4	Α.	There is no longer a company named Ferris. It's a brand.
5	Q.	And there hasn't been a company named Ferris since well
6	prio	r to this lawsuit being filed, correct?
7	Α.	That's correct.
8	Q.	When talking about your profits, you kept using the term
9	"take	e-home pay."
10	Α.	Yes.
11	Q.	And you referred to that as being the 5.6 percent profit
12	numbe	er. Do you remember that?
13	Α.	I think I said 5 to 7.
14	Q.	5 to 7, okay. Just to be clear, that number is after
15	absol	lutely everybody in the company's been paid, right?
16	Α.	That's correct.
17	Q.	All the rent's been paid?
18	Α.	Yes.
19	Q.	The wax on the floor of the gymnasium is Munnsville has
20	been	bought and applied?
21	Α.	Yeah, I don't think we spend too much on that, but
22	Q.	But everybody's
23	A.	Yes.
24	Q.	everybody's gotten their salaries?
25	Α.	Correct.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 183 of 282 - Page ID # 23247

1	Q. Okay. You mentioned that you received your largest bonus
2	of \$90,000 last year. You didn't mention your salary last
3	year. What was your salary last year?
4	A. My salary was about 190.
5	Q. Okay. And isn't it true that in terms of running the
6	day-to-day operation of your business, you target actually a
7	a standard gross profit that you try to achieve, right?
8	A. That's true.
9	Q. And the standard gross profit that you try to achieve is
10	20 to 25 percent, correct?
11	A. I disagree with that number.
12	Q. Okay. Do you know who Mr. Bill Shea is?
13	A. I do.
14	Q. He is your director of sales?
15	A. He is.
16	MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay. I'd like to show the witness
17	a 30(b)(6) excerpt from Mr. Shea regarding this issue,
18	Your Honor.
19	THE COURT: Any objection, Mr. Wolf?
20	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, I don't believe he was a
21	30(b)(6) on this topic, but I have no objection to him asking
22	the witness about his testimony.
23	THE COURT: He has asked to show the testimony.
24	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'd like to show
25	MR. WOLF: Oh, that's fine, Your Honor.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 184 of 282 - Page ID # 23248

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	
1	THE COURT: You may proceed.
2	MR. VANDENBURGH: Will you pull up page 109 of the
3	Shea.
4	Your Honor, can we publish this to the jury?
5	THE COURT: Yes, you may. And we're talking page
6	what?
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: 109, I believe.
8	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
9	Q. Okay. So at the top there, starting at line 4, it says:
10	So Briggs has when Briggs sells to a dealer, delivers
11	to a dealer, at the end of that transaction they want 20 to 25
12	percent generally?
13	And that is a benchmark for the success of your operation?
14	Answer: It's not a benchmark. It's not Briggs's
15	benchmark; it's Phil's benchmark.
16	Would you interpret his reference to Phil as being to you?
17	A. I would.
18	Q. So your director of sales says that you personally have a
19	target standard gross profit of 20 to 25 percent. Do you
20	believe that he's lying when he says that?
21	A. I don't believe he's lying. I've known Bill for most of
22	my life. I think he's just mistaken.
23	Q. Well, assuming he's correct, do you understand that
24	that both experts agree in this case that the actual standard
25	gross profit that Briggs realized over the entire infringement

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 185 of 282 - Page ID # 23249

1	period was 31 percent?
2	A. Yes.
3	Q. Okay. So assuming we credit Mr. Shea's testimony, you've
4	achieved somewhere between 6 and 11 percent higher profit than
5	what he describes as your target gross standard gross
6	profit. Agreed?
7	A. According to what Mr Bill Shea has identified, yep.
8	Q. Just a brief question on the demonstration we saw
9	yesterday.
10	How much does that mower cost at retail? What's the
11	retail price of that mower?
12	A. That particular one is \$20,000.
13	Q. That one of your highest-end mowers?
14	A. It is the highest end one.
15	Q. Okay. Is there a reason why you chose the highest-end
16	mower to bring in to show to the jury?
17	A. We wanted to show everything that we had there with our
18	suspension and just what's all involved with the mower and
19	thought that that was the best demonstration of that.
20	Q. You sell a lot more mowers that have, for example, the
21	48-inch deck that we see here in the courtroom, correct?
22	A. We do.
23	Q. And you didn't bring a 48-inch zero-turn mower to show the
24	jury, did you?
25	A. No. No, we did not.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 186 of 282 - Page ID # 23250

1	1	Q	Ω
		0	2

1	Q. On the issue of national accounts, you answered carefully
2	that you currently do not have any Ruppert's business; do you
3	remember that?
4	A. I do.
5	MR. WOLF: Objection to characterization.
6	THE COURT: Sustained.
7	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
8	Q. Did you, in fact, get the Ruppert's business for some
9	period of time?
10	A. Yes, couple years.
11	Q. Okay. And you subsequently lost that business back again?
12	A. We did.
13	Q. And you lost that do you know who you lost that
14	business to?
15	A. I believe it was Exmark.
16	Q. I want to talk about the change that you made to your
17	baffle design some time after the lawsuit was filed.
18	First of all, even after you instituted that change, you
19	didn't stop selling the mowers with the original baffle design,
20	did you?
21	A. We did not. We sold what we had manufactured, that's
22	correct.
23	Q. Okay. And, in fact, it took you sold that original
24	baffle design for years after this lawsuit was brought,
25	correct?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 187 of 282 - Page ID # 23251

1	A. There's some models that were slow-moving that it took a
2	few years to get rid of them but wasn't any great quantity.
3	Q. I want to understand this though because you testified,
4	when Mr. Wolf was questioning you, that if you had just known
5	that there was an issue with these mowers, you would have
6	stopped right away. Isn't that your testimony?
7	A. I believe that was my testimony.
8	Q. But even for the original baffle design that's been found
9	to infringe, you didn't stop selling right away, did you?
10	A. We did not.
11	Q. Now, let's talk about the modified baffle design. Were
12	you involved personally involved in the redesign effort?
13	A. No. Just general oversight.
14	Q. Did that general oversight include input on the shape of
15	the front baffle?
16	A. No, I did not input on the shape.
17	Q. Okay. But you were personally involved in the redesign,
18	weren't you?
19	A. I was watching it very closely.
20	Q. You were involved in testing of it, weren't you?
21	A. I yes, I was seeing how it worked, yes.
22	Q. And you were involved in discussions about various
23	possible alternative designs you could go to, right?
24	A. Yes.
25	Q. And and one of the things that you considered was

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 188 of 282 - Page ID # 23252

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

actually take that front baffle out altogether, right?		
A. It's a a consideration, sure.		
Q. And you specifically considered that in this instance,		
didn't you?		
A. I don't I think, you know, we listed everything up on a		
board that was possible. That was a first part of the		
exercise.		
Q. And one of those considerations was removing the front		
baffle altogether, wasn't it?		
A. I don't specifically remember, but it could have been.		
Q. Okay. In fact, you didn't do that though, did you?		
A. Did not.		
Q. And the reason for that is because the front baffle's		
important, isn't it?		
A. The front baffle makes a difference.		
Q. Now, another thing you could have done is remove those		
baffle portions that direct the air and grass clippings into		
the downstream blade, correct? Do you know what I'm talking		
about?		
A. Yes.		
Q. Did you consider that as a possible redesign?		
A. You know, I don't know all the specifics of all the ones.		
They had a few up there on the board that they were looking at,		
but, you know, for me to tell you the shape of every one, I		
Q. Well, let me ask you this: You already have some mower		

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 189 of 282 - Page ID # 23253

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	designs that don't have that portion that directs the air and
2	grass into a downstream blade, right? Your smaller decks?
3	A. Like two-blade decks?
4	Q. I think even some three-blade 44-inch decks have just a
5	front baffle across the front?
6	A. Could be. Could be.
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: If I could have draw on the
8	ELMO.
9	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
10	Q. I'd like to take a version of Plaintiff's Exhibit 49,
11	which has already been admitted, and just draw in what I'm
12	talking about here.
13	See what I've drawn there in red? It's probably too close
14	to the blades that the blades might strike it. But do you
15	get what I'm talking about with just a curved front baffle that
16	just goes all the way across the front of the blades?
17	A. I do.
18	Q. Do you remember seeing that shape of a baffle in your
19	smaller 44-inch decks?
20	A. I believe so.
21	Q. Okay. And so that's a design that you could have gone to
22	in 2010 after this lawsuit was brought, right?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. But you didn't go to that because having those portions
25	that direct the air and grass into the downstream blade, that's

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 190 of 282 - Page ID # 23254

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

	······································
1	important, isn't it?
2	A. Well, we didn't build this one and test it, so I can't say
3	that for sure. This is the way this is the direction that
4	we chose.
5	Q. And you chose not to go in the direction of this
6	alternative design that you actually already had on some other
7	smaller mowers, correct?
8	A. That's correct.
9	Q. It's been a couple of days, but we heard a lot early in
10	the trial about the Walker design. Do you remember that?
11	A. Yes, I do.
12	MR. VANDENBURGH: Will you put up Exhibit 179. I
13	think it's already been admitted.
14	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
15	Q. So you recall this, don't you? There's been testimony
16	that this is a design from Walker that has just a very short
17	baffle there shown in red?
18	A. Yes.
19	Q. Okay. Were you aware of this baffle design at the time
20	that you did your redesign work in late 2010?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. And so this is a design that you could have gone to,
23	right?
24	A. Yes.
25	Q. And, in fact, it's been pointed out that that small baffle

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 191 of 282 - Page ID # 23255

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	has at least one portion that acts to direct air and grass
2	clippings into the downstream blade, right? You've heard that
3	testimony?
4	A. Yes.
5	Q. But nonetheless, you didn't go to that design, correct?
6	A. That's correct.
7	Q. And the reason is because, having just a short baffle like
8	that doesn't provide the advantages of the '863 patent,
9	correct?
10	A. I don't know that to be true.
11	Q. The last one I want to mention is the Scag redesign. And
12	what I'd like to do is pull up that same just a one
13	corner I don't want to show anything other than the picture.
14	(Mr. Vandenburgh conferred with Mr. Mayleben.)
15	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, this was done in his
16	direct examination. I'd like to publish just this one picture
17	for the jury.
18	THE COURT: And and for the record, it's exhibit
19	number what?
20	MR. VANDENBURGH: 678.
21	THE COURT: Thank you. You may proceed.
22	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
23	Q. So I believe you testified earlier that this is Scag's
24	current design, correct?
25	A. Yes.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 192 of 282 - Page ID # 23256

1195

1	Q. And I want to make sure the jury understands what we're
2	looking at here. So first of all, is it correct that there is
3	a front baffle that's kind of like that one on the small deck
4	that I drew that just goes, you know, like a V across the front
5	of the of the deck, right?
6	A. Yes.
7	Q. Those two flat pieces that we see, those aren't vertical
8	baffles inside the deck, are they?
9	A. No, they're not.
10	Q. They're they're flat plates that are horizontal to the
11	top wall of the deck?
12	A. That's correct.
13	Q. And so there's actually space underneath where we see
14	those flat plates?
15	A. Yes.
16	Q. Now, I think you testified that you couldn't do exactly
17	what Scag does because they have a patent on it, right?
18	A. That's correct.
19	Q. But it's your understanding that you could put in that
20	baffle design as long as you didn't make that front baffle
21	movable. Was that your testimony?
22	A. Yes.
23	Q. And again, was that an option that you were available
24	that you were aware of at the time you did your redesign work
25	in 2010 here?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 193 of 282 - Page ID # 23257

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	A. I was aware of it, yes.
2	Q. Okay. But again, you chose not to go with that design,
3	did you?
4	A. That's correct.
5	Q. So let's talk a little more specifically about what you
6	did go with.
7	Pulled up a deck here. I'd like to place the clips
8	approximately where I don't know if I've got it exactly
9	right, but will you agree with me that that's approximately
10	where Dr. Strykowski said there's an elongated and
11	substantially straight portion in the in the Briggs decks?
12	MR. WOLF: Objection. I just note for the record,
13	Your Honor, this witness is neither an expert nor
14	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'm not going to
15	THE COURT: Just a second. First of all, you've
16	placed clips on exhibit what?
17	MR. VANDENBURGH: Good question, Your Honor. 1401.
18	THE COURT: Okay. So the objection is what?
19	MR. WOLF: I've got three objections, Your Honor:
20	One, he's not an expert.
21	Two, he wasn't intimately involved in the redesign.
22	And third, the witness was sitting next to me during
23	Dr. Strykowski's testimony and I didn't see where the
24	clothespins were. Mr. Cohn is the only one that walked around.
25	MR. VANDENBURGH: If the witness

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 194 of 282 - Page ID # 23258

1 THE COURT: The trouble is that I don't believe that 2 this witness said that he participated in the redesign. That's my question -- or my problem. So let's just have a short 3 sidebar, counsel. 4 (At sidebar) 5 THE COURT: So where are you going? 6 7 MR. VANDENBURGH: I'm not planning to ask him any 8 technical questions. I just want to ask him about the 9 testimony of the various experts in this case. 10 THE COURT: Well, the trouble is, is he didn't see 11 the clips. I don't have any doubt he didn't see it, except 12 that somebody's taken some photographs and I don't know if he's 13 reviewed them. 14 MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay. Can I use a different 15 exhibit that I know he has seen because it was published? I 16 can use the Dr. Strykowski cover shots. 17 THE COURT: Report. But where are you going? 18 MR. VANDENBURGH: I just -- I want to ask him that he 19 understands what they say it is and then I want to ask him if 20 he understands what their expert's position is. 21 THE COURT: And why do you want to do that? 22 MR. VANDENBURGH: Because their expert has an 23 interesting position in this case and -- one of the willfulness 24 factors on which Your Honor instructed is efforts to design

25 around the patent.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 195 of 282 - Page ID # 23259

1 THE COURT: Okay, now stop. I'm not clear I 2 understand this guy's role. He's the vice president of what? MR. WOLF: Of business. He's the -- he runs the 3 business but he was not -- we're going to have Mr. Marshall 4 5 here -- Mr. Laurin here tomorrow, is actually the one that engineered this redesign. And if he -- if this is fair game 6 7 for any nonfact witness, it's with Mr. Laurin. I mean, this 8 is -- I mean, frankly --9 THE COURT: Okay, just a second. He's the CEO, 10 effectively, of this company? 11 MR. WOLF: Yes. 12 THE COURT: Of this brand? 13 MR. WOLF: Yes. 14 THE COURT: And we're talking about willfulness. 15 MR. WOLF: Well, but we're talking about technical 16 aspects of willfulness. We're not asking who did you talk to, 17 who did you hire, who did you consult? He's asking for 18 basically a technical opinion on what claims mean, on how the products read on the claims. 19 20 MR. VANDENBURGH: I'm not going to ask for that, 21 Your Honor. 22 THE COURT: He didn't -- he didn't -- and the other 23 part of this is this witness did not participate in the 24 development of the new design by his testimony today. 25 MR. VANDENBURGH: My colleague, Mr. Winkels, is so

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 196 of 282 - Page ID # 23260

1	efficient that he has handed me deposition testimony from
2	Mr. Laurin who's going to come in tomorrow. He was their
3	30(b)(6) deponent on this topic.
4	Question: Did Phil Wenzel provide design ideas for the
5	shapes of the baffles?
6	Answer: We shared ideas together.
7	And did Mr. Wenzel have specific ideas about the shape of
8	the baffle that he shared with you?
9	Answer: Yes.
10	MR. WOLF: And if he wants to ask those, that's fine
11	what those are but that's not asking him infringement opinions.
12	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'm not going to ask him
13	infringement opinions.
14	THE COURT: Here's the problem. This guy was he's
15	your oldest employee in Ferris and he's done everything, from
16	bottom to top, including fabrication and now including design.
17	And you're asking the jury to do the same thing he's going
18	to ask your CEO to do and if he can't hold up under cross you
19	got trouble.
20	MR. WOLF: Well, Your Honor well, no, my question
21	is on a question-by-question basis, he he is there's
22	no evidence that he's analyzed the patent. In fact, he said he
23	hasn't analyzed the patent. If he's going to start using claim
24	terms that Your Honor's construed
25	THE COURT: I don't want to do that.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 197 of 282 - Page ID # 23261

1	So tell me again, why do you want to use this?
2	MR. VANDENBURGH: I just for willfulness purposes,
3	for his belief he doesn't infringe, I want to ask him about
4	first just to lay foundation that he knows what our experts
5	have how they view certain elements of the claim and then I
6	want to ask him about their expert.
7	THE COURT: You know, my inclination is he's not an
8	expert on the technical end of it. I just as soon we not get
9	into this.
10	MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay.
11	THE COURT: If you want to cross-examine him on his
12	role and lay some more foundation and then be able to get into
13	this, I'm willing to listen to it, but right now I don't think
14	you've got enough foundation for you to cross-examine him on
15	the technical aspects of how the redesign violates the patent
16	and I think that's where you're going.
17	Am I right or wrong?
18	MR. VANDENBURGH: Well, actually actually it has
19	more to do with their expert.
20	THE COURT: And if you're so now you're asking him
21	to be an expert against their own expert.
22	MR. VANDENBURGH: No. I'm asking him if he knows
23	what their expert said at his deposition.
24	THE COURT: But their expert was hired after they did
25	the redesign, not before they did the redesign.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 198 of 282 - Page ID # 23262

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	MR. VANDENBURGH: If, for example, their expert
2	disagreed with their case, that would go to willfulness. If
3	especially if he's aware of that testimony.
4	THE COURT: But his willfulness predates the hiring
5	of the expert.
6	MR. VANDENBURGH: True.
7	THE COURT: So I'm just not
8	MR. VANDENBURGH: All right.
9	THE COURT: I'm not going to let you do it.
10	MR. VANDENBURGH: Thank you, Your Honor.
11	(In open court)
12	THE COURT: All right. You may proceed.
13	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
14	Q. So going back to this this issue of your testimony this
15	morning where you said, again, if you'd just known, you would
16	have stopped. You sold millions of dollars of inventory of
17	mowers with the original baffle design, even after this lawsuit
18	was filed, correct?
19	A. There's an amount, I don't know exactly how much it is.
20	Q. I'd like to then go back to that.
21	MR. VANDENBURGH: If we could pull up and I don't
22	have this in the binder but it's Exhibit 523 that was admitted
23	yesterday during Miss Bennis's testimony.
24	Could we publish this for the jury, Your Honor?
25	THE COURT: Yes, you may.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 199 of 282 - Page ID # 23263

1202

-	
1	MR. VANDENBURGH: If you can highlight the bottom
2	line well, I guess
3	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
4	Q. So this shows for the mowers with the original baffle
5	design, in fiscal year 2011 you sold 32 million, roughly,
6	dollars of the of mowers.
7	Now, when does your fiscal year begin and end?
8	A. Begins July 1st.
9	Q. So fiscal year 2011 starts July 1st, 2010?
10	A. No, just the opposite.
11	Q. Fiscal year 2011 starts July 2011?
12	A. Fiscal year 2011 would start in July of '10.
13	Q. Okay. All right.
14	A. Yes.
15	Q. So the 32 million in 2011 includes mower sales before you
16	introduced the modified design, correct?
17	A. Yes.
18	Q. Okay. But if we go to fiscal year 2012, that starts
19	July 1, 2011, you already had the modified design in
20	production, correct?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. And that started about 14 months after the lawsuit was
23	filed, correct?
24	A. Yes.
25	Q. And in that fiscal year you sold roughly a

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 200 of 282 - Page ID # 23264

1203

r	
1	million-and-a-half dollars of the mowers that have already been
2	found to infringe, correct?
3	A. Yes.
4	Q. And then in fiscal year 2013, which starts more than two
5	years after the lawsuit was filed, in that year you sold a
6	little over 700,000, correct?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. And then in fiscal year 2014, so now we're starting three
9	years after the lawsuit's been filed, we're back up to 921,000,
10	correct?
11	A. That's correct.
12	Q. Now, let's talk about the modified design. Because one of
13	the things, again, that you said is that if we knew that Exmark
14	had a problem, we wouldn't want to deal with it, we would
15	just we'd run away from it and avoid it, right? Is that
16	your testimony?
17	A. That was my testimony, had I known back in the much
18	earlier, when we were a smaller company, yes.
19	Q. Well, then let's talk about what you did in 2010.
20	Now, Exmark didn't somehow lay in the weeds on the
21	modified design, did they?
22	A. On the modified design, no.
23	Q. Okay. You knew immediately after that product was
24	introduced that Exmark still considered it to be an
25	infringement, correct?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 201 of 282 - Page ID # 23265

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	A. Yes, that's correct.
2	Q. And yet it's been almost five years now that you've been
3	continuing to sell that mowers with that deck design?
4	A. That's true, because we don't do not believe that it
5	infringes.
6	Q. Okay. So as long as in your opinion you believe there's
7	no infringement, you'll keep going, even if Exmark thinks it
8	does. Is that your testimony?
9	A. We've had multiple opinions that it does not infringe.
10	Q. Okay. But you've still sought to fight in this case for
11	the right to keep selling that baffle design, right?
12	A. We are staying we stuck with that baffle design, yes.
13	Q. And you've sold, at least as of last October, almost a
14	half a billion dollars of mowers with that baffle design,
15	right?
16	A. That's correct.
17	Q. And you chose to continue to do that instead of removing
18	the baffle, going to the straight-across-the-front baffle,
19	going to the Walker baffle, going to the Scag baffle, you chose
20	to stick with this one instead of any of those other
21	alternatives, right?
22	A. We did.
23	Q. In fact, your mindset was never to avoid infringement
24	here, was it?
25	A. No, it was to avoid infringement, absolutely.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 202 of 282 - Page ID # 23266

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	Q. Wasn't your mindset really to just see if a lawsuit gets
2	filed and if it does you'll just manage your way through it?
3	A. No.
4	Q. You don't view your position in this lawsuit as being one
5	of just managing your way through it?
6	A. No, not at all.
7	Q. Okay. I'd like to have you turn to Exhibit 425.
8	MR. WOLF: Is it in the book?
9	THE WITNESS: I don't see it.
10	MR. WOLF: I'm not finding
11	MR. VANDENBURGH: No, I'm sorry. I had the wrong
12	exhibit number. That's a page number.
13	Can I have Exhibit 344.
14	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
15	Q. And can you tell us what this document is?
16	A. It says Commercial Product Plan.
17	Q. Are you involved in preparing commercial product plans at
18	Briggs & Stratton?
19	A. I am.
20	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, I'd offer Exhibit 344.
21	MR. WOLF: No objection, Your Honor.
22	THE COURT: Received.
23	MR. VANDENBURGH: And publish it for the jury?
24	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
25	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 203 of 282 - Page ID # 23267

WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)

1	Q. And I'd like to direct your attention to the page that has
2	425, ends in 425 in the lower right-hand corner.
3	MR. VANDENBURGH: Just blow up the whole thing.
4	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
5	Q. Now, first of all, what we see on the top left, it says
6	Last Six Months; do you see that?
7	A. Yes.
8	Q. And at the bottom item for under What Went Wrong, we
9	see "Exmark/Toro infringement challenge." Correct?
10	A. Yes.
11	Q. Does that suggest to you that this document was prepared
12	some time in the latter half of 2010?
13	A. Yes.
14	Q. And then what's the response that must happen in the next
15	six months to the right there?
16	A. "Manage our way through."
17	Q. Yeah. Manage your way through doesn't mean stop
18	infringing, does it?
19	A. Yes, it does, to me.
20	Q. But you you've already acknowledged that you kept
21	selling even the original product design for years after this
22	document was prepared.
23	A. We sold the inventory that we had. And we moved we
24	moved to the new design as quickly as we could, which was
25	within six months.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 204 of 282 - Page ID # 23268

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

<b>o o</b>	
WENZEL - Cross (Vandenburgh)	1207
Q. But you moved to a design that you know, and you knew,	
that Exmark still considered to be infringing its patent, e	ven
though you say you had lots of alternatives available to yo	u,
correct?	
A. We're confident it does not infringe.	
Q. Manage your way through doesn't mean pay fair compensa	ition
for the years of past sales by the original product design,	
does it?	
A. There's no offer on the table that to my knowledge	for
such.	
Q. One thing that manage your way through could mean is t	0

11	Q. One thing that manage your way through could mean is to
12	hire a very talented law firm to fight through five years of
13	litigation, right?

14 A. We redesigned as quickly as we could to get in a 15 non-infringement position. That's what we did. And we did 16 sell our inventory.

17 When this lawsuit was filed, there was about Q. 18 five-and-a-half years left on the life of the '863 patent, 19 correct?

20 Yeah, I guess -- yes. Α.

21 Did you hear Mr. Busboom's testimony that this patent Ο. 22 is -- expires in November of this year?

23 A. I did.

24 MR. WOLF: Your Honor, I think this counsel's about 25 to open a door to something he doesn't want to open.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 205 of 282 - Page ID # 23269

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1	THE COURT: Well, I think we're getting very close to
2	the edge, so just govern yourself accordingly, counsel.
3	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
4	Q. I really have just one more question. Isn't managing your
5	way through just making sure that you can keep selling
6	infringing product up until the time that this patent expires?
7	A. Absolutely not.
8	MR. VANDENBURGH: I have no further questions.
9	THE COURT: Redirect, Mr. Wolf.
10	MR. WOLF: Yes. Thank you, Your Honor.
11	REDIRECT EXAMINATION
12	BY MR. WOLF:
13	Q. Tired yet?
14	A. I'm getting there, that's for sure.
15	Q. Sometimes when I'm tired at home, I admit to mistakes I
16	didn't make, and that's where I'd like to start.
17	You remember you were questioned about the deposition in
18	Scag?
19	A. Yes.
20	Q. Do you remember you were asked about whether or not
21	Mr. Marschall was representing you at that deposition?
22	A. I do.
23	Q. And you remember saying, on the stand, just a couple of
24	hours ago, you might have made a mistake?
25	A. I did.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 206 of 282 - Page ID # 23270

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1	$\sim$	$\sim$	$\sim$
- I		11	ч
_	~	U	~

1	Q. That's what you testified to?
2	A. That's what I testified to.
3	Q. Well, let's figure out whether you actually did make a
4	mistake.
5	MR. WOLF: Alex, can we call it up.
6	Start with that.
7	And, Your Honor, there's been sufficient discussion of
8	this deposition and counsel asked enough about it that we'd
9	actually like to move its admission.
10	THE COURT: Any objection?
11	MR. VANDENBURGH: Yes, Your Honor. It's hearsay.
12	THE COURT: Sustained. It's used for impeachment,
13	counsel.
14	MR. WOLF: I understand, Your Honor.
15	THE COURT: And once it's used for impeachment,
16	that's an exception to the hearsay rule. That's that's just
17	my rule, okay? I don't admit depositions except under very
18	exceptional circumstances, so that's my ruling.
19	MR. WOLF: All right. Well, in the issue of
20	completeness then I'd like to show the witness some additional
21	testimony from it.
22	THE COURT: And you're welcome to do that.
23	MR. WOLF: Thank you, Your Honor.
24	BY MR. WOLF:
25	Q. First of all, we were looking at the front screen and it

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 207 of 282 - Page ID # 23271

5
WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf) 1210
says, For Defendants: Michael Best & Friedrich by
Richard H. Marschall.
Do you see that?
A. Yes.
Q. And actually, it might be better, do you still have the
binder I gave you?
A. Yes, I do.
Q. Could you look at the tab.
MR. WOLF: And just, Your Honor, for timing, when
would you like to take our next break?
THE COURT: About 3:40.
MR. WOLF: Okay.
THE WITNESS: Which was the tab number?
MR. WOLF: Is there I hate to do this, Your Honor,
but is there any way we could take a bio break now?
THE COURT: Sure.
MR. WOLF: We'll leave the witness on the witness
stand but
THE COURT: No, I understand.
So, ladies and gentlemen Is five minutes sufficient,
Mr. Wolf?

MR. WOLF: Yes, Your Honor. THE COURT: All right. Ladies and gentlemen, we'll take five minutes at this time. We're in recess.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 208 of 282 - Page ID # 23272

1 (Jury out and recess taken at 3:15 p.m.) 2 (At 3:22 p.m.; with counsel and the parties' representatives present; WITHOUT the jury:) 3 PHILIP WENZEL RESUMED THE WITNESS STAND 4 THE COURT: Please be seated. 5 We have an issue that we need to take up at this time? 6 7 MR. WOLF: Very briefly, Your Honor. And it's tricky and I invite your guidance. 8 9 THE COURT: Good luck. 10 MR. WOLF: Yeah. That was actually sincere in that 11 particular instance. 12 So as Your Honor's aware, there is a willfulness 13 allegation against the old design but not the new design. 14 For the first time that at least I'm aware of, we heard 15 allegations in -- or argument in this cross that somehow that 16 stub period after the filing of the lawsuit, when there was the 17 wind-down of the old product, that that's somehow evidence of 18 willfulness. 19 Now, here's the --THE COURT: Well, here's the way I took the evidence. 20 21 MR. WOLF: Okay. 22 THE COURT: Mr. Wenzel is coming across as the lamb 23 that has been led to the shearer, okay? 24 MR. WOLF: Yes. 25 THE COURT: He's not the lamb that's been led to the

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 209 of 282 - Page ID # 23273

1 shearer. He's like my old boss's secretary. She's crazy like 2 a fox. Okay? So he says that he would have -- if he would have been 3 contacted originally, he would have done X. And the answer was 4 he was contacted originally on the redesign and he did Y. 5 MR. WOLF: Well, here's the problem --6 7 THE COURT: Whether that goes to willfulness, I see 8 your point. But now you want to do what? 9 MR. WOLF: Well, here's the problem. Almost 10 immediately -- and we've kept this out entirely -- almost 11 immediately there were discussions of the invalidity of the 12 patent. 13 THE COURT: Yeah. 14 MR. WOLF: And so I -- we have studiously avoided 15 that topic. 16 THE COURT: Well, he -- yeah. And -- and during 17 cross-examination stuff comes up and he's already testified. 18 We've had numerous opinions that the patent is invalid and you 19 have studiously tried to keep attorney-client privilege out of 20 the redesign process and he brought it in, okay? He did. Not 21 me, not the defendant's lawyer, but your CEO of this mark, 22 okay? 23 Now, it's my intention not to let them pursue that because 24 it happened during cross-examination. 25 So, you know, I'm not sure where you're going. What do

1 you want to do? 2 MR. WOLF: Your Honor, I actually don't want to do anything. What -- I think at the end of the day what I'd like 3 is an instruction that the stub period doesn't weigh into the 4 5 willfulness analysis. THE COURT: Well, they're not going to be asked about 6 7 willfulness with respect to the redesign. Your client's 8 conduct before the redesign and then his conduct after the 9 redesign is by the same person, and his conduct in total helps 10 decide what his thinking was before the redesign. 11 And that's just unfortunately the way it is, Mr. Wolf. 12 If you had two different executives, maybe you could get 13 away with it, but you don't. 14 MR. WOLF: Well, Your Honor, we'll -- we'll leave it 15 for today, but we may come back at you to request that 16 instruction. 17 THE COURT: And I have no problem with that at all. 18 I -- it's just that, you know, there's overlap on all of 19 these issues --20 MR. WOLF: Understood. 21 THE COURT: -- and the question is how far do you get 22 into the overlap before you really are inquiring about 23 something the jury ought not to be inquiring. 24 And I -- I -- at this juncture, I don't think we've gone 25 over the threshold. And that's why I would be reluctant to

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 211 of 282 - Page ID # 23275

1 allow anyone to continue to probe these issues any more deeply, 2 certainly to cover them, but not to probe them any more deeply. MR. WOLF: All right. Well --3 THE COURT: So that would be my general direction. 4 If there's something specific you want to do and you want to 5 ask me in advance how I'm likely to rule on it, I'm certainly 6 7 willing to do that. 8 MR. WOLF: I don't think there's anything with this 9 witness we're going to do but it may come up with a later 10 witness and we'll talk about it in advance. 11 THE COURT: Thank you very much. 12 All right. If we can get the jury. 13 And I want to say that you very artfully brought up the 14 bio break. I'd never heard that before. When you get to a 15 certain age, you understand exactly what you're talking about. 16 All right. Nice job, Mr. Wolf. 17 MR. WOLF: Thank you, Your Honor. 18 (Jury in at 3:27 p.m.) 19 THE COURT: Please be seated, ladies and gentlemen. 20 So ladies and gentlemen of the jury, we took a break a 21 little out of order. It's my intention to go to as close to 22 five as we can, but if someone gets uncomfortable sitting 23 there, don't be afraid to raise your hand and we can take a 24 break, okay? 25 Oh, and another question. You know, we shouldn't give you 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 212 of 282 - Page ID # 23276

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1	very many breaks.
2	MR. WOLF: Is it one I should have thought of,
3	Your Honor?
4	THE COURT: Who knows?
5	Oh, okay. If you would show this to the lawyers and then
6	they can confer.
7	(The courtroom deputy showed the juror's question to
8	counsel.)
9	THE COURT: You may continue your examination,
10	Mr. Wolf.
11	MR. WOLF: Thank you.
12	REDIRECT EXAMINATION CONTINUED
13	BY MR. WOLF:
14	Q. We were looking at the deposition from the Scag case. Do
15	you recall that?
16	A. Yes.
17	Q. And we were noting that on the cover page it indicates
18	that Mr. Marschall was just the defendant's, not your, lawyer?
19	MR. WOLF: Let's look at the third page, Alex, if we
20	may.
21	BY MR. WOLF:
22	Q. And it begins
23	MR. WOLF: Let's just do the first ten ten lines
24	or so. And actually, can you scroll up just a little higher.
25	BY MR. WOLF:

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 213 of 282 - Page ID # 23277

1216

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

	WENZ	EL - Redirect (WOII) 1216
1	Q.	So we see that the first person to question you was
2	Mr.	Marschall, right?
3	Α.	That's correct.
4	Q.	Now, that's the person that at the end of the deposition,
5	afte	r that heated exchange about privilege, you said was your
6	lawy	er. That's what prompted you to say there was a mistake,
7	righ	t?
8	A.	Yes.
9	Q.	All right. Well, let's look at how the deposition began.
10		Examination by Mr. Marschall:
11		Question: Good morning. Could you please state your name
12	for	the record?
13		Answer: Philip H. Wenzel.
14		Mr. Wenzel, my name is Rick Marschall, I'm here on behalf
15	of t	he defendants.
16		Do you see that?
17	A.	I do.
18	Q.	Were you a defendant in that case?
19	Α.	I was not.
20	Q.	Does this perhaps explain your understanding of who was
21	bein	g represented and who wasn't?
22	A.	That was certainly my understanding, that I wasn't being
23	repr	esented.
24	Q.	And is that consistent with what you see on the screen
25	righ	t there?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 214 of 282 - Page ID # 23278

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1	A. It is.
2	Q. Okay. I'm going to go through roughly in reverse order
3	some of the issues raised by Mr. Vandenburgh, perhaps some more
4	important than others.
5	First was this question of when you stopped and what you
6	stopped. Just to be clear, when you finalized the redesign,
7	did you at that point stop making any new mowers of the old
8	design?
9	A. We did.
10	Q. So you ceased entirely
11	A. A hundred percent.
12	Q. There was a question where you were asked about Mr. Shea's
13	testimony and profit. Do you recall that?
14	A. Yes.
15	Q. Do you happen to know whether Mr. Shea was talking in his
16	deposition did Mr. Vandenburgh show you whether he was
17	talking about standard gross profit or gross profit?
18	A. It doesn't say.
19	Q. And we'll let Mr. Bone explain the difference, but
20	A. Exactly.
21	Q. Now, in the video well, let let's put some context
22	around this. I believe you testified yesterday that suspension
23	was important to three things: comfort, productivity, and
24	maintenance, slash, durability.
25	Did I remember your testimony correctly?

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 215 of 282 - Page ID # 23279

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1	A. That's correct.
2	Q. In the video Mr. Vandenburgh played, it compared one of
3	those three features, comfort, to cut; is that right?
4	A. Yes.
5	Q. So it didn't talk at all about the other two advantages of
6	suspension?
7	A. It did not.
8	Q. So with that context, does that video in any way change
9	your belief that suspension, with all of its advantages, is or
10	is not more important than cut?
11	A. No.
12	Q. So what is your view? Is suspension with all three of its
13	advantages, not just comfort, more or less important than cut?
14	A. More important than cut.
15	Q. Can you explain why?
16	A. Because we have a we're talking about a level of cut,
17	that you're either exceptional or acceptable. And our as we
18	established here, even we have we have an average cut. And
19	the suspension has many more benefits for the actual users and
20	purchasers of the equipment at that level and we're willing to
21	give up some of the real high-end ones that require an
22	exceptional cut.
23	Q. Let's look at Exhibit 366, at the front page, just to
24	orient ourselves. This is the catalog you were asked. And
25	let's turn to page 1584.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 216 of 282 - Page ID # 23280

1219

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1	Do you remember you were asked a long series of questions
2	about this and a similar document?
3	A. Yes.
4	Q. All right. Now, just so we're clear, these aren't the
5	actual selling prices of these particular features, right?
6	A. They are not.
7	Q. And what do they represent again?
8	A. They're the sales folks got together and that's put
9	together what they felt those features could be that the buyer
10	gets for free, so to speak, because if you took them out they
11	could be valued that way against the competition.
12	Q. All right. So but let's assume for the most those were
13	retail prices. And let's assume that let's do an easy math
14	one, the two-wheel front IS suspension, \$200. Do you see that?
15	A. Yes.
16	Q. That would be revenue, not profit, right?
17	A. That's correct.
18	Q. And so
19	A. In fact, that wouldn't even actually be revenue. Those
20	are retail prices that would be discounted below that.
21	Q. So if it was for sale for 200 bucks, assume that was an
22	actual retail price, what would your profit be on that number?
23	A. 5 to 7 percent.
24	Q. Of something less than 200?
25	A. Yes.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 217 of 282 - Page ID # 23281

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

Q.	So, what, 5 to \$7?
Α.	Of 200, so it'd be probably \$12.
Q.	Twelve dollars?
Α.	Yeah.
Q.	So just so this this catalog, as it were, if you
want	to use it the way Mr. Vandenburgh uses it, the profit
numb	er for independent suspension is 12-ish dollars; is that
righ	t?
Α.	Yes.
Q.	You were asked about Exhibit 327, Commercial Product Plan.
And	particularly excuse me, I apologize, 344. And
part	icularly, page 10 140425. Do you remember that?
Α.	I do.
Q.	And says, "Manage our way through."
	How did you manage your way through, in your own words,
plea	se?
Α.	We performed a redesign and put that into production as
quic	kly as we possibly could.
Q.	Let's go to 327.
	Now, this Mr. Vandenburgh established was a a a
mark	eting brochure for the iCD after this lawsuit was filed
duri	ng the process of the redesign; is that right?
A.	It is.
Q.	Would you believe it would have been appropriate to
show	to advertise the old baffle in light of the fact that

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 218 of 282 - Page ID # 23282

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

	-	-	
1	$\gamma$	$\gamma$	1
1	2	2	1

F	
1	it had been accused of infringement?
2	A. Did not. That's why we didn't do it.
3	Q. So in other words, you flipped it around to respect
4	Exmark's claim?
5	A. Absolutely.
6	Q. All right. Let's turn to Exhibit 314, please.
7	Just so we're clear and we'll go to 311 which has a
8	better picture. There was some some testimony about what
9	was innovative and what was well, let's look at the words on
10	the page. "The new iCD" and maybe we'll just go straight to
11	311. I'm sorry, I've got my notes wrong.
12	No, 314 is right.
13	MR. WOLF: Can you call up the picture of the baffle.
14	BY MR. WOLF:
15	Q. Can you draw the outlines of the baffle chamber, please.
16	A. (The witness complied.)
17	Q. All right. So are the blades inside the baffle chambers?
18	A. They are.
19	Q. Did you redesign the blades?
20	A. We did.
21	Q. Did they become more effective as a result of the
22	redesign?
23	A. They did.
24	Q. Did you redesign the chute, the discharge?
25	A. We did.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 219 of 282 - Page ID # 23283

_	WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf) 1222
1	Q. Was that inside the baffle chamber?
2	A. Yes, here (indicating).
3	Q. And do you consider that did you believe that improved?
4	A. It definitely improved, absolutely.
5	Q. And while the individual features collectively might not
6	have been your own collectively, were they innovative in
7	your mind?
8	A. Well, they were, yeah, in my mind, I guess, and the
9	marketing department's, sure.
10	Q. And just to be clear, the one thing that didn't change was
11	the baffle design, right?
12	A. That's correct.
13	Q. So when you use the phrase when the jury takes this
14	back in the jury room and they see "redesigned baffle chamber,"
15	what was redesigned?
16	A. The blades, the opening, spindles.
17	Q. Now, there was a lot of discussion before lunch about
18	Mr. Baumbach. First question for you, roughly when did
19	Mr. Baumbach leave?
20	A. 2001.
21	Q. Do you know the circumstances of his departure?
22	A. I don't know for certain.
23	Q. Was he fired? Did he find a new opportunity?
24	A. Well, no, he was not fired. I think it was that his wife
25	didn't like the New York winters.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 220 of 282 - Page ID # 23284

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

	WENZE	EL - Redirect (Wolf)	1223
1	Q.	And so he found a new job and moved?	
2	Α.	Yes.	
3	Q.	It was an amicable departure?	
4	Α.	Oh, absolutely.	
5	Q.	In this case, is Exmark accusing Mr. Baumbach of copy	ing?
6	Α.	I think they are.	
7	Q.	And did Exmark contact Mr. Baumbach in 2011 through a	
8	priva	ate investigator?	
9	Α.	They did.	
10	Q.	Did they act did the private investigator actually	Y
11	talk	to Mr. Baumbach?	
12	Α.	He did.	
13	Q.	Did Exmark wait to tell Briggs about that event until	
14	2015?	2	
15	Α.	They did.	
16	Q.	Are you aware of any effort that Exmark took to secure	Ð
17	Mr. E	Baumbach's testimony through deposition, for example, i	n
18	this	trial?	
19	Α.	No, I am not aware of any.	
20	Q.	Mr. Wenzel, at any time counsel was asking you about	ıt
21	the p	period between the design of the between the time yo	ou
22	start	ted working on the baffle in roughly '96 and when the	
23	pater	nt issued in 1999.	
24		At any time in that window did you see any indication	that
25	there	e was patent pending on the baffle design?	

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 221 of 282 - Page ID # 23285

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

г	
1	A. I did not.
2	Q. In this case, have you seen any indication of patent
3	pending with regard to this baffle design?
4	A. I have not.
5	Q. Now, let's look at Exhibits 441 and 442.
6	And let's make it easy and look at just the second one
7	because I'm sure the jury remembers.
8	This was the discussion of your interactions with Exmark
9	products.
10	A. Yes.
11	Q. And it's Phil, discussed program [sic] on 1000Z, made
12	changes to deck to improve cut, very close to quality of Exmark
13	now.
14	MR. WOLF: And can we call up the date, Alex?
15	BY MR. WOLF:
16	Q. So this this email was or letter, whatever it is,
17	document was about two years after you introduced a product
18	that had the '863 baffle; is that right?
19	A. That's correct.
20	Q. So with the '863 baffle, you had a cut, prior to this
21	letter, that was inferior to Exmark's; is that a fair reading?
22	A. Yes.
23	Q. And you had a lot of engineering to do to even though
24	you had this baffle, you had a lot of additional engineering to
25	do to get the quality of cut you wanted to get up to. Is that

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 222 of 282 - Page ID # 23286

1225

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

r	
1	a fair reading?
2	A. That's a fair reading and that's what that was talking
3	about.
4	Q. Is it common in the industry to say, what do we need to do
5	to get that company's quality of cut or that company's quality
6	of ride or that company's durability?
7	A. Certainly.
8	Q. Beyond that, there were lots of documents about switches
9	and spindles and seeing what certain companies did better than
10	others. Is is it your understanding in the industry that
11	everybody does that?
12	A. Yes.
13	Q. Nothing nefarious about that?
14	A. No.
15	Q. All right. Let's get to the heart of the matter, the '863
16	patent and your knowledge of the patent, of course, as the jury
17	will hear, that's not really the question that's going to be
18	asked, but let's still talk about your knowledge of the patent
19	itself.
20	How many competitors does did Ferris have in, say, from
21	'99 to 2005?
22	A. I think it's been talked about here by various people,
23	from 30 to 60.
24	Q. Because we've been left with the impression that there are
25	only two players in this world.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 223 of 282 - Page ID # 23287

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

. ,
A. I know, I know.
Q. So and do each of those 30 to 60, to your knowledge,
have patents?
A. I can't speak specifically, but there's a lot of patents
out there people have on things, so I would assume there'd be a
lot of patents, yes.
Q. Can do you have a rough estimate, even ballpark of how
many mower patents come out each year? Are we talking a dozen,
hundreds, thousands?
A. Oh, no, no, you're talking at least hundreds.
Q. Come out each year?
A. Come out each year, yes.
Q. And for Ferris at the time Let me just ask a very
straight business question. Given your size and your revenues,
would you have had the resources to do a patent policy that
checked patents that were issuing and compare it to old
products?
A. No, we would not.
Q. So how did you expect to to learn about infringements
in the situation where a patent issued after you already had a
product on the market?
A. We expected the holders of those patents to notify us.
Q. And did they in this case?
A. They did not.
Q. Now, that doesn't get you off the hook for infringement,

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 224 of 282 - Page ID # 23288

1227

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1	does it?
2	A. No, no.
3	Q. So was your policy perfect?
4	A. No.
5	Q. You're going to have to write a check?
6	A. We're going to have to write a check for something, yeah.
7	Q. But does that mean you willfully infringed the patent?
8	A. Absolutely not.
9	MR. WOLF: I may be finished, Your Honor.
10	BY MR. WOLF:
11	Q. Actually, let me ask you one more time to look this jury
12	in the eye and simply answer this question: Did you know, at
13	any time prior to this lawsuit, about claim 1 of the '863
14	patent?
15	A. I did not know any time prior to this lawsuit of the '863
16	patent. Honest truth.
17	MR. WOLF: Nothing further, Your Honor.
18	THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen, do you of the
19	jury, do you have any additional questions of this witness?
20	All right. Ms. Lawrence.
21	(A juror submitted a question.)
22	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, could I have a couple
23	of questions of recross?
24	THE COURT: Well, what I'm going to do is find out
25	what the jury's questions are

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 225 of 282 - Page ID # 23289

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1	MR. VANDENBURGH: I'm sorry.
2	THE COURT: and then you can combine it with your
3	recross.
4	(The courtroom deputy showed the question to the Court,
5	and then to counsel.)
6	MR. WOLF: I'll ask the question.
7	THE COURT: If you would. And then and then
8	Mr. Vandenburgh can do his recross along with cross on that
9	issue.
10	MR. WOLF: Okay.
11	REDIRECT EXAMINATION CONTINUED
12	BY MR. WOLF:
13	Q. Since Briggs & Stratton created a ground-breaking feature
14	with the flow control baffle
15	MR. WOLF: Actually, Your Honor, may we approach?
16	Because I'm not there's actually a I misread the question
17	when I first saw it.
18	THE COURT: I think you did. All right.
19	MR. WOLF: May we approach?
20	(At sidebar)
21	THE COURT: So this question really asks if you
22	applied for a patent and why you didn't apply for a patent on
23	your redesign. I think that's what this question is.
24	MR. WOLF: And I don't even know the answer to that
25	question. I don't know if this witness

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 226 of 282 - Page ID # 23290

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1 THE COURT: Well, I know the answer and I think both 2 of you know the answer and the question is whether you want to ask it or not. You don't have to ask the question is the 3 bottom line. 4 5 MR. WOLF: Yeah. This is not the right witness because he wouldn't know, so I'd like to talk to -- whether 6 7 Mr. Laurin knows, I mean, can we punt-kick this can down the road? 8 9 THE COURT: It's up to you if you want to kick the 10 can down the road or not. But then the question is whether 11 Mr. Vandenburgh --12 MR. VANDENBURGH: I'm probably going to ask something around this question. He did testify that he believed the 13 14 redesign was better. 15 THE COURT: All right. So you were going to ask it 16 in your recross anyway. 17 MR. VANDENBURGH: Correct. 18 THE COURT: Or something similar to it. Correct? 19 MR. VANDENBURGH: Correct. 20 THE COURT: All right. So --21 MR. WOLF: All right. I'll ask the question then. 22 THE COURT: Do what you want to do. 23 MR. WOLF: Yeah. 24 (In open court) 25 THE COURT: All right, you may proceed.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 227 of 282 - Page ID # 23291

WENZEL - Recross (Vandenburgh)

]	
1	BY MR. WOLF:
2	Q. So let me first ask you whether you'd be the right witness
3	to ask this.
4	Do you happen to know whether or not Briggs is
5	contemplating filing for a patent on its redesigned baffle?
6	A. I do not.
7	Q. Would Mr. Laurin be a better person to ask that question
8	to?
9	A. He would.
10	MR. WOLF: Thank you.
11	THE COURT: All right. Mr. Vandenburgh, recross.
12	MR. VANDENBURGH: Just a couple of questions,
13	Your Honor.
14	RECROSS-EXAMINATION
15	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
16	Q. On that one we just talked about, has there been any
17	patent application filed to date on the redesigned baffle
18	design?
19	A. There has not.
20	Q. You emphasized that once you changed manufacturing over to
21	the redesigned baffle you ceased manufacturing of mowers with
22	the original baffle design. But you didn't cease sales. Is
23	that right?
24	A. We didn't cease we did not stop selling the inventory
25	that we had at present.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 228 of 282 - Page ID # 23292

WENZEL - Recross (Vandenburgh)

i	
1	Q. You sold out several million dollars of inventory over the
2	next three years?
3	A. Yes.
4	MR. VANDENBURGH: Will you pull up Exhibit 327.
5	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:
6	Q. So this is the exhibit showing how you changed the iCD
7	advertising display after the suit was filed. Do you remember
8	that?
9	A. Yes.
10	Q. And you indicated that you thought it was no longer
11	appropriate to show the underside because you didn't want to
12	show the original baffle design?
13	A. No.
14	Q. Okay. In fact, what's under that design, because it's
15	after the lawsuit was filed, is the modified baffle design?
16	Correct?
17	A. Yes.
18	Q. And that's the modified design that you say you believed
19	avoided infringement?
20	A. Well, I mean, we have inventory too, so
21	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, now we're really getting into
22	the area we talked about when the jury was out.
23	THE COURT: I don't think so. He may continue the
24	examination. The objection's overruled.
25	BY MR. VANDENBURGH:

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 229 of 282 - Page ID # 23293

WENZEL - Redirect (Wolf)

1	Q. You never showed your customers in your advertising your
2	decks with the modified baffle design, at least in what we see
3	here. Correct?
4	A. We did not.
5	MR. VANDENBURGH: I have no further questions.
6	THE COURT: All right.
7	MR. WOLF: One question?
8	THE COURT: Any follow-up, Mr. Wolf?
9	Just a second. Just have a seat.
10	All right. Now you may ask your questions, Mr. Wolf.
11	REDIRECT EXAMINATION
12	BY MR. WOLF:
13	Q. Mr. Wenzel, do you continue to routinely show the
14	redesigned baffle at trade shows, et cetera?
15	A. Yes, we do.
16	MR. WOLF: No further questions.
17	THE COURT: All right. You may step down,
18	Mr. Wenzel.
19	You may call your next witness, Mr. Wolf, or
20	MR. WOLF: Your Honor, Mr. Cohn is going to take over
21	the reins for the rest of the day.
22	THE COURT: Okay. Mr. Cohn, you may call your next
23	witness.
24	MR. COHN: Your Honor, we Briggs & Stratton calls
25	Denis Del Ponte.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 230 of 282 - Page ID # 23294

1	And with Your Honor's permission, I'd like to move one of
2	these decks over here as we had last week.
3	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
4	MR. COHN: A little practice with this, Your Honor.
5	THE COURT: All right. Mr. Del Ponte, we are going
6	to ask you a couple of questions and then swear you in.
7	COURTROOM DEPUTY: Would you please state your full
8	name, spelling your first and last name for the record.
9	THE WITNESS: Yes. My name is Denis, D-E-N-I-S,
10	middle name, J., James, Del Ponte, D-E-L, space, capital
11	P-O-N-T-E.
12	DENIS DEL PONTE, DEFENDANT'S WITNESS, SWORN
13	MR. COHN: Your Honor, may I approach the witness
14	with a binder?
15	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
16	MR. COHN: Do you need some water?
17	THE WITNESS: I have water. Thank you.
18	DIRECT EXAMINATION
19	BY MR. COHN:
20	Q. Good afternoon, Mr. Del Ponte.
21	A. Good afternoon.
22	Q. Could you introduce yourself to the jury, please?
23	A. Yes. My name's Dennis Del Ponte. I'm a former employee
24	of John Deere. I'm from Wisconsin. And I spent 28 years with
25	John Deere in our commercial division or pardon me, our

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 231 of 282 - Page ID # 23295

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn) 1234 1 consumer products division, which is most notably lawn mowing 2 and lawn-mowing machines. 3 Q. You may have to keep your voice up. Okay. 4 Α. I know it's late in the day, but just so everyone can hear 5 Q. 6 you clearly. 7 And are you here today to talk about the mower that's up front here --8 9 MR. COHN: Your Honor, if I may, just to look at the 10 sticker. 11 BY MR. COHN: 12 -- Exhibit 32? Ο. 13 Yes, I am. Α. 14 Okay. So we spent a lot of time today talking about the Q. 15 old mower but today you're going to talk about Exhibit 32. Did 16 I get that right? 17 Yes. Α. 18 Q. Okay. Where do you currently live, Mr. Del Ponte? 19 I currently live in Wisconsin, in northern Wisconsin. Α. 20 And how long have you lived there? Q. 21 Twelve years. Α. 22 What do you currently do, Mr. Del Ponte? Ο. 23 Currently I'm retired. Α. 24 And have you -- have you ever worked for Briggs & Stratton Ο. 25 or Ferris or Simplicity or any of those other companies we've

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 232 of 282 - Page ID # 23296

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

been	talking about over here?
Α.	No, I have not.
Q.	And have you worked for Exmark before?
Α.	No, I have not.
Q.	Did you go to college?
Α.	Yes, I did.
Q.	Where'd you go?
Α.	I went to the University of Wisconsin. I studied
mecha	anical engineering. I hold a bachelor of science degree in
mecha	anical engineering.
Q.	And what did you do after you well, let's go back.
When	did you get that degree?
Α.	I got that degree in 1966.
Q.	Okay. And what did you do after you graduated?
Α.	After graduation, I went to work in what we refer to as
the r	machine tool industry, which included a company called
Gidd:	ings & Lewis in Wisconsin, a very small machine tool
compa	any in Massachusetts, and a very large machine tool company
calle	ed Cincinnati Milacron.
Q.	Did you get a lot of practical experience in engineering?
Α.	In yes.
Q.	Did there come a time when you began to work in the lawn
mower	r industry?
Α.	In 1974, my family and I relocated from Cincinnati, we
moved	d back to Wisconsin, and that's when I joined John Deere.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 233 of 282 - Page ID # 23297

1	2	ર	6
1	2	$\mathcal{I}$	U

r	
1	Q. And was that in Horicon, Wisconsin?
2	A. That's in Horicon, Wisconsin, correct.
3	Q. What was the Horicon facility, what was their role for
4	John Deere?
5	A. At that time, within Deere & Company, we had three major
6	divisions: an agricultural division, a construction division,
7	and a consumer products division. The consumer products
8	division was solely located in in Horicon, Wisconsin.
9	Q. About how many about how many people worked at John
10	Deere Horicon when you started?
11	A. When I started, we employed about 12-, 1500 employees.
12	Q. Okay. Now, when you got there, what did you do for John
13	Deere?
14	A. When I started at John Deere, I worked in what we refer to
15	as manufacturing engineering. It's an area where where
16	we're responsible for developing, procuring tooling, fixtures,
17	machinery that's necessary for the manufacture of component
18	parts for weldments, for assembly, and finally, the the end
19	assembled product.
20	Q. And what kind of products were being manufactured there at
21	the time?
22	A. When I started, we were manufacturing with ride-on
23	equipment, we were manufacturing lawn tractors, lawn and garden
24	tractors, were our major major ride-on products. We also
25	had walk-behind mowers, walk-behind snowblowers. We also

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 234 of 282 - Page ID # 23298

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

r	
1	manufactured, obviously, the mower decks for the for the
2	for the equipment. We also manufactured snowblower
3	attachments, tiller attachments.
4	Q. And did there come a time when you your
5	responsibilities changed at Deere?
6	A. Yes. After let's see, '74, I believe after five years,
7	about '69, I was promoted to the level of project engineer in
8	manufacturing, which broadened my responsibilities.
9	Q. And did you have a staff as a project engineer?
10	A. At that time I had a staff of I believe about seven or
11	eight personnel in the manufacturing segment.
12	Q. Did there come a time when your responsibilities changed
13	again?
14	A. Yes. Following manufacturing engineering, I became a
15	project engineer in in product design where we had direct
16	responsibility for designing the end product, a product that we
17	would we would sell eventually to to customers.
18	The products the products at that time that I was
19	responsible for were our lawn and garden tractors.
20	At the time we had three major series of lawn and garden
21	tractors. They had a numbering system and they were the 200
22	series, the 300s, and the 400 series tractors.
23	Q. And that was was that roughly the mid '80s?
24	A. That was in the mid '80s.
25	Q. And did there come a time where your responsibilities

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 235 of 282 - Page ID # 23299

1	
1	changed yet again?
2	A. Yes. After about five years of product design in the lawn
3	and garden tractors, I took responsibility of product design
4	for mowers, mower decks, mower attachments, and the
5	basically the collection systems that are associated with
6	collecting grass for
7	Q. And what time frame was that that you were working on the
8	mower attachments?
9	A. That would have been about the late '80s, up until 1993.
10	Q. And the mower attachments that you were working on for
11	Deere in that time frame, did they include three-bladed mowers?
12	A. Yes, they were
13	Q. And I'm sorry. Go ahead.
14	A. They were single-blade mowers, double-blade and
15	triple-blade mowers at that time.
16	Q. And were some of the three-blade mowers decks THAT you
17	were working on, were those in a side discharge mower?
18	A. Yes, all of our mowers were side discharge.
19	Q. Did you have a staff at the time?
20	A. Yes. Here again, my staff was about six, seven engineers,
21	designers, involved with with mower design.
22	Q. Did there come a time when you were a project engineer for
23	mower attachments that you became involved in a research
24	project regarding the air flow underneath mower decks?
25	A. Yes. There was a period in there where we were looking

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 236 of 282 - Page ID # 23300

1	for a way to oh, how should I say, search or or work
2	through the the black art of trying to understand what's
3	really happening under a under a mower deck in terms of air
4	flow. We entered into a a development program with a
5	consulting firm that whose area of expertise was
6	computational fluid dynamics, or CFD. And the the goal
7	was was an attempt to establish a computer model that would
8	help us predict how air or how material flows in and out of
9	a out of a mower deck.
10	Q. Did you say you were working with an outside firm on that
11	project?
12	A. Yes, this was an outside firm. The corporation was
13	Technalysis. They were located in Indianapolis.
14	Q. What kind of credentials did the people at Technalysis
15	have?
16	A. These were high-level engineers, doctorates, Ph.D.'s, on
17	both the both the engineering side as well as software
18	engineers, computer programmers, those types of those types
19	of people.
20	Q. So you now you might need to move the microphone back a
21	bit.
22	Thank you.
23	So with the help of these Ph.D.'s and the computers at the
24	outside firm and the knowledge that you had at John Deere, were
25	you guys able to to make a computer model that would that

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 237 of 282 - Page ID # 23301

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

1	could be used to predict air flow under the deck?
2	A. Unfortunately, the program was was extremely
3	unsuccessful.
4	Q. How did you know it was unsuccessful? How did you figure
5	that out?
6	A. There was there was no way we could predict, even under
7	a basic mower deck with one blade could we predict what the
8	what the flow in and out and through the mower deck was going
9	to be like.
10	After about, oh, a year or two years and well over a
11	million dollars, the decision was made to abandon the project.
12	Q. So in light of that experience and your subsequent
13	experience at Deere, which we'll talk a bit about, if someone
14	told you that they can just look at a mower deck and predict
15	whether it's going to be good, bad or different than another
16	mower, how would you react to that?
17	A. They don't know anything about lawn mowing.
18	Q. How do you how does a person figure out how a lawn
19	mower's actually going to perform?
20	A. We really need to take the mower, bring it up to some
21	design level, but the ultimate test is to put it in the field,
22	under under a controlled environment, actually operate the
23	mower, and see how it performs.
24	Q. And were you involved in those kind of tests in your work
25	at Deere in the late '80s and early '90s?

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 238 of 282 - Page ID # 23302

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

r	
1	A. Yes. Yes, we were.
2	Q. How would those tests generally be done? How would you
3	evaluate the results of the mower?
4	A. Typically we would start with a base mower. We would work
5	on our what we refer to as our test quality plots. They
6	were very level plots. They weren't at least at that time,
7	I don't believe there were laser-leveled, but they were very
8	high quality plots with a with a known grass, be it
9	bluegrass or fescues, in the northern grasses. Southern
10	grasses we typically would use Bermudas or St. Augustines.
11	The type of grass has a significant effect on what we
12	refer to and what's been talked about as cut quality.
13	We would we would run the the mower over over a
14	length of of plot and we would have observers, three, four,
15	five observers, and they would be people from marketing or
16	field service or engineering, and with scorecards we would
17	assess various measurements, if you will, of cut quality, grass
18	dispersal, striping, clumping, evenness of cut, that sort of
19	thing.
20	Q. You mentioned the use of scorecards. Would you describe
21	that as a pretty scientific analysis or a pretty subjective
22	analysis?
23	A. It's it's a very subjective analysis, but if if we
24	can have a half a dozen people from from a cross section of
25	disciplines give us a score, it it gives at least gives

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 239 of 282 - Page ID # 23303

1	us a number that helps us quantify.
2	Q. Did there come a time in the early '90s when you got
3	promoted from the project manager at mower attachments to a
4	different position?
5	A. Yes. In early '93 I was promoted to the manager of of
6	the prototype shop and and our test facilities. Our
7	prototype shop between the prototype shop and our test
8	facilities, we had about 30, 35 technicians. I believe I had
9	on my staff about seven or eight engineers. And and across
10	our our field test sites, our we had about, on average
11	through the year, between 75 and a hundred test engineers.
12	Q. What was the annual budget of your department during that
13	time?
14	A. I believe when I retired, we were our total budget was
15	right around 7 million.
16	Q. Per year?
17	A. Per year.
18	Q. Now, what kind of testing, just generally, you don't need
19	to get into too much detail, but generally what kind of testing
20	did your group do?
21	A. Yeah, our testing is generally in two areas. We have what
22	we call lab testing. And these are test cells in a laboratory.
23	One test cell was a sound room that would help us determine how
24	noisy our equipment is.
25	We had a hot room. We had a cold room. So we could do

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 240 of 282 - Page ID # 23304

1	environmental testing as at various temperatures.
2	We had dynamometers to help us understand performance
3	characteristics. We could we could cycle our machinery
4	through predetermined cycles.
5	We did stress testing, string gauge testing, which helps
6	us measure what kind of loads are on various components.
7	We also had test cells for all of our safety requirements.
8	There's a voluntary standard within the industry by which we
9	conform, by which we we need to conform to our safety
10	standards.
11	Beyond that, we have our our field test sites. We had
12	one in Horicon and we have one in Florida. And those tests
13	those test sites, especially Florida, runs year-round. And
14	that's where most of our drivers are.
15	Our our all of our all of our product, before it
16	goes to production, has to has to go a minimum of one one
17	life cycle; that is to say, if a lawn tractor is has a
18	design life of 400 hours, it has to pass a 400-hour field
19	actual field test.
20	Q. During your role as manager of these test facilities, did
21	your group test both consumer and commercial grade mowers?
22	A. Yes. Our test sites when I had a test site, I was
23	responsible for for the field providing field testing and
24	laboratory testing for all all consumer and all commercial
25	products.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 241 of 282 - Page ID # 23305

Q. And just to tie that to this case, did some of the
commercial John Deere mowers that you tested, were they side
discharge, three-blade kind?
A. Yes.
Q. And did did those side discharge, three-blade
commercial mowers that you were responsible for testing, did
they have baffles in them?
MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, this is outside the
scope of his report and is not related to his qualifications.
MR. COHN: Your Honor, he was asked about it in
deposition.
THE COURT: I understand. I don't as I sit here,
I don't have a copy of his report, but I I'm going to
overrule the objection if it's just a preliminary inquiry into
his experience.
MR. COHN: It is, Your Honor.
THE COURT: You may proceed.
BY MR. COHN:
Q. Can you can you describe the baffles that were on the
John Deere commercial mowers that you were responsible for
testing at the time?
A. Yes. The the type of baffling we used in in my
period of time as at at John Deere, almost all of our
mower decks were, I would say, of what I would call the stamped
mower deck variety and their design configuration is somewhat

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 242 of 282 - Page ID # 23306

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

1 different than what we see in this commercial configuration. 2 Typically, we did not have a full baffle that went from -from the -- what I call the right side of the -- of the mower 3 deck to the discharge chute. 4 We would -- we would attempt to put in small V-baffles or 5 a hat-shaped baffle or some configuration of baffle, typically, 6 7 right in front of where the -- the blades meet. Those areas 8 we've known from experience are very suspect of basic things 9 like blowout, grass striping in those areas where there's just 10 so much air pressure in there it actually prevents the grass 11 from coming up to be cut, and in extreme cutting conditions 12 it's -- it's very possible that you would get dribbles of 13 clippings coming off the back of the deck in two distinct 14 paths. 15 MR. COHN: Your Honor, at his deposition he made a 16 drawing of this. I would like to show it as a demonstrative, 17 very briefly. 18 THE COURT: Any objection? 19 MR. VANDENBURGH: No, Your Honor. 20 THE COURT: You may proceed. 21 MR. COHN: Let's put it up. 22 BY MR. COHN: 23 I'm just going to put this up here on the screen. Do you Ο. 24 recognize what we're looking at? It's DX-976. 25 Α. Yes, I do.

#### 8:: 3307

8:10-cv-0	00187-JF	B-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 243 of 282 - Page ID # 23307
	DEL 1	PONTE - Direct (Cohn)
1	Q.	And what is that?
2	Α.	That's the underside of a a sketch of an underside
3	afte	r three-spindle mower deck.
4	Q.	What's the A and the B that we're looking at?
5	Α.	The A and B would be representative locations of these
6	smal	l baffles that we would put between the between the
7	blade	e paths.
8	Q.	Can you show on the screen with your finger where the A
9	and	the B are.
10	A.	(The witness complied.) A and B.
11	Q.	Okay. Thank you, Mr. Del Ponte.

12 Roughly what percentage of Deere's commercial mowers at 13 the time that you were the manager of the test group had baffles like these? 14

I would venture to say upwards of 60 percent. 15 Α.

16 Q. Okay.

17

MR. COHN: You can take that down now.

BY MR. COHN: 18

19 Did there come a time where you became involved with the Q. 20 Outdoor Power Equipment Institute?

21 Yes. As manager of -- of the prototype shop and field Α. 22 tests, I also had responsibility of representing John Deere on 23 the -- on the OPEI -- Outdoor Power Equipment Institute. My 24 primary -- my primary role on that -- serving on that committee 25 was the development of -- of standards for our product.

the A

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 244 of 282 - Page ID # 23308

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

1	Q. Was OPEI, was that an important national trade association
2	at the time?
3	A. To this at that time it was a voluntary institute, but
4	quite frankly, they had a very, very heavy impact on consumer
5	products or pardon me, on lawn mowers sold in the U.S. and
6	it it really behooved all of the manufacturers of lawn
7	lawn care equipment to be part of the of the voluntary
8	institute, if you will.
9	Q. And did you say you were John Deere's representative to
10	OPEI?
11	A. Yes.
12	Q. And in the in that capacity, did you meet with
13	representatives from other companies at the OPEI meetings?
14	A. Yes, very definitely.
15	Q. And did that include Exmark?
16	A. Yes, I believe so.
17	Q. Did you review the '863 patent in this case?
18	A. Yes, I did.
19	Q. And you reviewed the the redesigned Ferris product in
20	this case?
21	A. Yes, I did.
22	MR. COHN: Your Honor, I would like to offer
23	Mr. Del Ponte as an expert witness on lawn mower design and
24	manufacture.
25	THE COURT: Any objection?

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 245 of 282 - Page ID # 23309

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

1	MR. VANDENBURGH: Is he not being offered to provide
2	an opinion on infringement?
3	MR. COHN: Yeah, he is being offered to provide
4	opinions that was my next question, what are your opinions.
5	He is being offered to provide opinions on non-infringement in
6	this case.
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: I certainly don't question his
8	qualifications generally in lawn mower art but we haven't heard
9	anything yet about his qualifications regarding patents.
10	THE COURT: I agree. So if you'd lay a little
11	more little more foundation, Mr. Cohn, as it relates to
12	patent.
13	MR. COHN: Okay.
14	BY MR. COHN:
15	Q. Did you review the patent in this case?
16	A. Yeah yes, I did.
17	Q. And did you come to an understanding of how you determine
18	whether a product infringes a patent?
19	A. Yes, I did.
20	Q. How do you what is that understanding? How do you make
21	that determination?
22	A. That determination, it comes in an understanding of the
23	claims that are a part of the patent and equally important are
24	the elements within each claim and all of the elements of a
25	claim have to be met.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 246 of 282 - Page ID # 23310

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

1	Q. And did you do a comparison of the claim language to the
2	product that's at issue, the redesigned product?
3	A. Yes, I did.
4	Q. And in order to come to an understanding of what the words
5	in the claim mean, did you review the definitions of certain
6	terms that Your Honor provided earlier in the case?
7	A. Yes, I did.
8	Q. And as to other terms in the claim, did you come to an
9	understanding based on your experience in the field of lawn
10	mower design and manufacture?
11	A. Yes.
12	Q. And did you review the entirety of the '863 patent, not
13	just the claims?
14	A. Yes, I did.
15	MR. COHN: Your Honor, I would like to proffer him
16	again as an expert on non-infringement.
17	MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, we don't object.
18	THE COURT: You may proceed.
19	MR. COHN: Thank you.
20	Thank you, counsel.
21	BY MR. COHN:
22	Q. So let's talk about the redesign. I think we just
23	mentioned, you've rendered an opinion that the redesign does
24	not infringe; is that right?
25	A. That is correct.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 247 of 282 - Page ID # 23311

г	· · ·
1	Q. Okay. Why doesn't the redesign infringe? Just just
2	generally now. We're going to go through the detail of it.
3	A. Okay. Generally, the redesign does not infringe because
4	it does not meet all the elements of a of in this case,
5	claim 1.
6	Q. And specifically, which elements does the redesign not
7	meet, in your opinion?
8	A. In my opinion, it does not meet the elongated and
9	substantially straight baffle portion.
10	Q. Are there any other aspects of the elongated and
11	substantially straight baffle portion that this mower does not
12	meet?
13	Let me ask it this way: Does the claim, claim 1, does it
14	provide for a specific location for where the elongated and
15	substantially straight portion must be?
16	A. Most certainly.
17	Q. And where is that?
18	A. The the patent limitations require that the elongated
19	and substantially straight portion begins where the where
20	the first profile, which is curved, where the first profile
21	ends and the straight portion ends or the second or
22	second third profile or second curve begins.
23	MR. COHN: Your Honor, may I approach the Exhibit 32?
24	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
25	BY MR. COHN:

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 248 of 282 - Page ID # 23312

1	Q. So I think you talked about a first profile and a second
2	profile and a third profile. Did I hear that right?
3	A. Yes.
4	Q. Okay. And I just want to see if we can explain to the
5	jury what you mean by that.
6	Where is the first profile that you're talking about?
7	A. The first profile begins about where your left hand is,
8	adjacent adjacent to the that side of the mower housing.
9	And it follows generally the blade path to to a point
10	where where it no longer follows the the path if you
11	would
12	Q. Where is that, here?
13	A. About
14	Q. I want to make sure I get this right.
15	A. Okay. Put your finger on the baffle. Over this way.
16	There.
17	Q. Okay. So this is what you called the the first
18	profile?
19	A. That is the first profile in the claim, yes.
20	Q. All right. And where's the second one?
21	A. The second profile the second profile?
22	Q. Yeah, what you called the second profile.
23	A. Yes, begins where your finger is now.
24	Q. My this one on my right hand?
25	A. Yes. Yes. And it continues until it inter until it

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 249 of 282 - Page ID # 23313

	DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn) 1252	52
1	meets the the end of the third profile.	
2	Q. Okay. And I'm just going to guess here and you tell me	
3	where to put it.	
4	A. I would go up a little bit.	
5	There.	
6	Q. Okay. And between my fingers is what you called the	
7	second profile?	
8	A. That is correct.	
9	Q. And then the third profile goes off	
10	A. Is the curve that follows the blade path.	
11	Q. Okay. We'll get back to these and we'll identify these	
12	specifically in a moment. I just wanted to establish a basis	
13	for our discussion.	
14	Now, how did you come to understand what the structure is	;
15	in the Ferris redesigned deck? Did you look at any engineering	g
16	drawings?	
17	A. Yes.	
18	Q. And did you come to an understanding of what the degree of	f
19	curvature was in that deck?	
20	A. Yes, I did.	
21	Q. How did you do that?	
22	A. We worked with the people at Munnsville. We observed some	ıe
23	of the mower decks. We looked at some drawings. We created	
24	some drawings that identify the the circles, if you will,	
25	that surround the blades, and and then the a third circle	е

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 250 of 282 - Page ID # 23314

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

1	
1	that creates what I refer to as the second the second
2	profile.
3	Q. Okay.
4	MR. COHN: Can we put up DX-717, please.
5	And I actually don't know if there are any objections to
6	this. I think we updated the exhibit about a week ago.
7	THE COURT: Are there any objections to 717?
8	MR. VANDENBURGH: Just a moment, Your Honor. Is it
9	in the binder?
10	MR. COHN: It's in the binder.
11	MR. VANDENBURGH: No objection, Your Honor.
12	THE COURT: 717 is received.
13	MR. COHN: Thank you, counsel.
14	THE COURT: You want to receive it you want it as
15	an exhibit, correct?
16	MR. COHN: I would. I was going to ask the witness
17	to establish what it is and then I was going to move to admit
18	it, Your Honor, but if there's no objection, then I'll just
19	move right now.
20	THE COURT: Any objection, Mr. Vandenburgh?
21	MR. VANDENBURGH: No, Your Honor.
22	THE COURT: All right. 717 is received.
23	BY MR. COHN:
24	Q. If Mr. Del Ponte, do you recognize this document?
25	A. Yes, I do.

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 251 of 282 - Page ID # 23315

	DEL	PONTE - Direct (Cohn)	1254
1	Q.	Okay. Let's turn to the sixth page, if we could.	
2		Yeah, that's right.	
3		What are we looking at here, Mr. Del Ponte?	
4	A.	This is a plan view of or the bottom view of a	
5	thre	ee-spindled mower deck. Happens to be the 52-inch mower	
6	deck	ζ.	
7	Q.	And I see these three circles. What do those three	
8	circ	cles represent on the deck?	
9	Α.	Those three circles represent circles from which the	
10	prof	file of the baffle is taken from.	
11	Q.	So so those circles reflect the shape of the baffle	
12	itse	elf?	
13	Α.	They're representative of segments of the of the cir	ccle
14	that	create the profile.	
15	Q.	And you see those numbers there where it says R9.25. I	Do
16	you	know what that means?	
17	Α.	Yes.	
18	Q.	What does that mean?	
19	Α.	That is the that is the radius of the circle. Twice	e
20	the	radius is a diameter, or the size of the circle.	
21	Q.	Now, as a result of the baffle being made from these th	iree
22	circ	cles, parts of the three circles, is there a symmetry that	ıt
23	resu	alts from that?	
24	A.	Yes, there is.	
25	Q.	Can you explain that, please?	

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 252 of 282 - Page ID # 23316

1	2	5	5

r			
1	A. If we if we were to split the profile Can I draw		
2	on		
3	Q. I believe you can, yeah.		
4	A. If we draw a line through the through the baffle in		
5	such a fashion		
6	Q. Try again. I think it only got part of it.		
7	A. I got it.		
8	Q. There you go.		
9	A. The baffle portion to the to the left is symmetrical to		
10	the baffle to the right.		
11	Q. Okay.		
12	MR. COHN: You can take that down now.		
13	BY MR. COHN:		
14	Q. Now, you heard the testimony of Mr. Busboom last week.		
15	A. Yes.		
16	Q. And have you read the expert reports that Mr. Busboom and		
17	Dr. Strykowski have submitted in this case on the issue of		
18	infringement?		
19	A. Yes, I have.		
20	Q. And is anyone arguing about whether those baffles are		
21	actually made out of three circles? Is that something that's		
22	in dispute?		
23	A. Yes, it is, I believe.		
24	Q. Well, hang on. Let me see. Maybe my question wasn't		
25	clear.		

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 253 of 282 - Page ID # 23317

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn)

1	MR. COHN: May I approach, Your Honor?
2	BY MR. COHN:
3	Q. Are any of the experts arguing whether these are circles
4	or not?
5	A. Oh, no.
6	Q. Okay. So in terms of in terms of how the baffle's made
7	and what its shape is, is anyone arguing about that?
8	A. I'm sorry? Run by
9	Q. Never mind. I'll ask a different question.
10	Let's talk about let's talk about the patent now.
11	And I think I already asked you how how someone goes
12	about determining whether a product infringes a patent claim or
13	not.
14	If is any one claim requirement in the claim any more
15	important than any other, when you do that analysis?
16	A. No, all the all the elements all the all the
17	elements carry the same weight.
18	Q. So if if just one requirement is missing, are you
19	infringing the patent?
20	A. Yes.
21	Q. If if one requirement is missing from a product
22	A. Oh.
23	Q are you infringing a patent?
24	A. Oh, no, no.
25	Q. All right. Let's go to the claim.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 254 of 282 - Page ID # 23318 DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn) 1257 1 MR. COHN: If we could go to Exhibit No. 1. 2 And if we could go to claim 1 and specifically column 6, starting around line 21. 3 Yeah, just blow that paragraph up, just the one. 4 Thank you. 5 BY MR. COHN: 6 7 Do you see on your screen a -- the claim language itself? Ο. 8 Α. Yes, I do. 9 And did you consider that claim language in your analysis Q.

in this case?

- 11 Yes, definitely. Α.
- 12 I want to go through the claim piece by piece because I'm Ο. 13 not sure it's been explained yet.
- 14 And I want to explain what each of these different terms 15 mean and then how you -- how you lined them up.
- 16 First there has to be a flow control baffle. Is anyone 17 arguing about that term in this case?
- 18 Α. No.
- 19 Okay. And then it says "comprising." What does that word Q. 20 "comprising" mean?
- 21 Include, made up of. Α.
- 22 So the flow control baffle in the patent has to be made up Q. 23 of whatever comes next in the claim; is that fair?
- 24 That's correct, yes. Α.
- 25 Okay. And the next one it says "a first arcuate baffle Q.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 255 of 282 - Page ID # 23319

1	$\sim$		0
1	Ζ.	0	0

•	
1	portion." Why does it say "first" there?
2	A. We it gives us a starting point for the baffle, for the
3	flow control baffle. It's a point to start from in in
4	describing the the continuous baffle from one side of the
5	mower deck to the other side.
6	Q. Okay. And what is an "arcuate baffle portion"?
7	A. A simple way of looking at arcuate is just to think of if
8	as part of a circle. It's a curve and it in this case,
9	it it typically has just one one center point or one
10	radius.
11	Q. Does the word "arc" have a meaning to an engineer like
12	yourself?
13	A. We we oftentimes use the word arc to describe a curve,
14	yes.
15	Q. Now, do do the Ferris redesigned mowers have a first
16	arcuate portion in the baffles?
17	A. Yes, they do.
18	Q. So there's no one arguing about that, right?
19	A. No, there's not.
20	Q. Okay. Now, the next thing in the claim, it says that the
21	first arcuate portion has first and second ends. What do those
22	words mean?
23	A. They mean the the arc or the curve has a starting point
24	and an end point.
25	Q. And what does the word "end" mean there in that passage?

### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 256 of 282 - Page ID # 23320

1	
1	A. It means the that is that is the end, that's where
2	the that's where that curve stops.
3	Q. And then the claim says we'll talk more about that in a
4	bit. The claim says "which extends from the interior surface
5	of said second side wall." Can you explain what that means?
6	A. The second side wall in the patent is what we refer to as
7	the right side of the of the mower housing. And the
8	the the first arcuate extends away, it moves as it
9	travels it moves away from the side wall as it continues on
10	its on its curve.
11	Q. And then it says "partially around said first cutting
12	blade." What does that language mean?
13	A. That means that means it's basically wrapping the
14	the path of the first cutting blade.
15	Q. Okay. And now now to the next claim element, which
16	which we've heard a lot about.
17	It says "a first elongated and substantially straight
18	baffle portion." What does that mean?
19	A. That means the next profile is elongated and substantially
20	straight.
21	Q. And does the does the substantially straight section,
22	does it have to be in a specific location?
23	A. Yes.
24	Q. And what tells us that?
25	A. It if we continue reading the the claim language, I

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 257 of 282 - Page ID # 23321

1260

1	
1	believe the next the next verbiage, "extending from said
2	second end of first arcuate baffle portion."
3	Excuse me.
4	That is to say the claim language is very specific that
5	the the profiles are connected. And per the claim language,
6	we have a first profile and a second the second profile has
7	to extend from the end of the first profile. And it continues
8	until it reaches its end, which is connected to the start of
9	of the in this case, the third profile.
10	Q. Now, is it important when the jury is considering
11	whether this mower falls inside or outside the claim, is it
12	important for the jury to figure out where the end of the first
13	arcuate portion is?
14	A. Absolutely.
15	Q. Why is that important?
16	A. Because that defines the that defines the profile of
17	the of the various portions of the baffle.
18	Q. Okay.
19	MR. COHN: Now if we could leave the claim language
20	up there just like that.
21	And with Your Honor's permission, I was going to ask you
22	to come down and we were going to put some more clothespins on
23	the mower and show the jury where you find the the parts of
24	the baffle.
25	THE COURT: As long as he has a microphone.

1261

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 258 of 282 - Page ID # 23322 DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn) 1 Ms. Lawrence, if you would fire up the microphone. 2 Sir. 3 THE WITNESS: Thank you. 4 MR. COHN: Let me back this up here so everybody can see. Okay. 5 BY MR. COHN: 6 7 Ο. Can you just test that microphone? Yeah. Testing. Testing. Can you hear me? 8 Α. 9 MR. COHN: Is that okay? 10 THE WITNESS: Okay? 11 MR. COHN: Just keep your voice up. 12 BY MR. COHN: 13 So the first question I want to ask is, where are the two Ο. 14 ends of the first arcuate portion?

15 The first arcuate portion begins generally in here. Α.

16 And -- this is the first arcuate portion and we can see it 17 sweeps the blade path --

18 Q. Keep your voice up if you can.

19 -- sweeps the blade path until a location about here where Α.

20 the profile starts to leave the blade path, so I would call

21 that the end of the first profile.

22 Now, you used the blade there to guide you? Ο.

23 Yes, I used the blade as a guide. Α.

24 Can you explain why that is a guide? Ο.

25 It's a guide because the -- like -- by the -- per the Α.

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 259 of 282 - Page ID # 23323

1	2	6	2

1	claim language, the the first arcuate profile or the first
2	portion of the of the baffle follows the follows the
3	blade path.
4	Q. Now, let me just put a clothespin on here somewhere about
5	three or well, about five or six inches to the jury's right
6	of your second clothespin that you called the end.
7	I want to ask you, would you call this the end of the
8	first arcuate portion?
9	A. No.
10	Q. Why why not?
11	A. It's not the end. It the profile continues from here
12	to here. And this portion of the profile is the same as this
13	portion.
14	Q. Does the curvature, the amount of curvature, end at
15	this
16	A. No.
17	Q the middle clothespin?
18	A. No, it does not.
19	Q. Does the curvature the amount of curvature end at the
20	left-most clothespin?
21	A. Yes.
22	Q. Now let's talk about the second claim element. What
23	Mr. Del Ponte, what is extending from the end of the first
24	arcuate portion in this mower baffle?
25	A. It's a it's another curve profile as we've seen in

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 260 of 282 - Page ID # 23324

1263

1	the in a previous drawing. And it's a profile that has the
2	same amount of curvature, it has the same radius, the same
3	diameter as this profile as well as this profile.
4	Q. Do you want to use a fourth clothespin and mark the the
5	end of that second profile?
6	A. Yes. I would
7	Q. And describe how you're doing that.
8	A. I will sweep the blade. And I'll use this edge of the
9	blade. And where I where I start to see the in the
10	let's say this profile starts to drift away from the blade path
11	is where this profile is where this profile ends and this
12	I'm sorry, where this profile begins and this profile ends.
13	Q. Now, I want to talk about the the baffle portion. Now,
14	when you say a profile, are you referring to at that baffle
15	portion, is that
16	A. I yes, I'm referring to the profiles as I believe
17	included in claim 1.
18	Q. Okay. Is there any difference between what you're calling
19	a profile and what we've been calling a baffle portion?
20	A. No, same thing.
21	Q. Okay. So with respect to this second baffle portion, is
22	that made up of one a part of one circle or parts of
23	multiple circles?
24	A. One circle.
25	Q. One circle. Is that right?

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 261 of 282 - Page ID # 23325

_	DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn) 1264
1	A. Yes, that's correct.
2	Q. Okay. Now, is the second baffle portion that you've
3	identified here between the third and fourth paper clips, is
4	that elongated and substantially straight?
5	A. No.
6	Q. And how do you know that?
7	A. Because it has an arc and
8	Q. Is the curvature here any different than the curvature
9	here?
10	A. No, no, the curvatures are all the same.
11	Q. Do you remember what Mr. Busboom said about this portion
12	of the baffle last week?
13	A. I
14	Q. It was a lot of testimony. If you don't, that's fine, I
15	don't want you to guess.
16	A. There was it was a lot of testimony. But he was trying
17	I believe he was trying to argue that that from this
18	clothespin to some arbitrary location up here, there was a a
19	section of baffle that was substantially straight and
20	elongated.
21	Q. Okay.
22	MR. COHN: Now, with Your Honor's indulgence, if I
23	could take a picture of this
24	THE COURT: Yes.
25	MR. COHN: and preserve it and then I'll ask the

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 262 of 282 - Page ID # 23326

DEL PONTE - Direct (Cohn) 1265 1 witness about some different clothespins. 2 THE COURT: Yes, you may. MR. COHN: I'm sorry, ladies and gentlemen. 3 (Mr. Cohn took a picture.) 4 MR. COHN: Thank you, Your Honor. 5 BY MR. COHN: 6 7 Now, I think you just mentioned -- I'm going to take these Ο. 8 paper clips off. 9 I'll leave these -- I'll take these off. 10 I think you just mentioned that Mr. Busboom -- I think you 11 used the word "arbitrary." 12 Α. Yes. 13 Can you show the jury where you recall Mr. Busboom Ο. 14 denoting the end of the first arcuate portion. 15 I would say generally here. Α. 16 And where did he put the other end of the -- of what he Ο. 17 called an elongated and substantially straight portion? 18 Α. Generally, I'd say about here. 19 Okay. Now, do you agree that what Mr. Busboom called the Q. 20 end of the first arcuate portion is the end? 21 No, it is not. Α. 22 And I think you said -- you used the word "arbitrary." Ο. 23 What did you mean by "arbitrary"? 24 I -- in my mind, he -- he roughly picked a point before Α. 25 the end of the profile and it's -- it's perhaps a best guess or

# 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 263 of 282 - Page ID # 23327

r	
1	an approximate, but
2	Q. Do you recall whether Mr. Busboom gave any reason why the
3	end of the first arcuate portion couldn't be an inch to the
4	left or an inch to the right of where he put it?
5	A. I don't recall that I guess it could be about anywhere.
6	It I think it's wherever it fits his argument.
7	Q. Do you believe that the the demarcation of these two
8	baffle portions fits the language of the claims?
9	A. Absolutely not.
10	Q. Why not?
11	A. Because the claim is very specific that there's a
12	there's a first portion that has a beginning and it has an end.
13	And the beginning and the end describe the profile of the first
14	portion.
15	Q. So if you could
16	MR. COHN: Your Honor, if I may take a picture of
17	this just for the record?
18	THE COURT: Yes, you may.
19	(Mr. Cohn took a picture.)
20	MR. COHN: Apologize to the jury for that, but the
21	record must be preserved.
22	BY MR. COHN:
23	Q. Mr. Del Ponte, if you could move this the right-most
24	paper clip to where you believe the end of the first arcuate
25	portion is.

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 264 of 282 - Page ID # 23328

		1267
Α.	Here. I would say generally about here.	
Q.	And if you could move the other one to where the end of	
that	second profile is.	
Α.	I would say about here.	
Q.	And do you believe that this demarcation between the	
baff	le portions, the end of the first arcuate portion, is th	at
where	e the claim tells you to put the end?	
Α.	Yes.	
Q.	And then the next piece, is that elongated and	
subst	tantially straight?	
Α.	No, it is not.	
Q.	Does this fit the claims, Mr. Del Ponte?	
Α.	No, it does not.	
	MR. COHN: Your Honor, I pass the witness.	
	THE COURT: Mr. Van Just have a seat in the	
witne	ess stand, sir.	
	Mr. Vandenburgh, how long do you anticipate your	
exam	ination lasting?	
	MR. VANDENBURGH: I would anticipate	
	THE COURT: Longer than 15 minutes?	
	MR. VANDENBURGH: Yes, Your Honor.	
	THE COURT: All right. Ladies and gentlemen, the	
lawy	ers and I have some other matters that we need to take u	р
and t	this is as good a time for us to take up those matters a	S
not.		
	Q. that A. Q. baff where A. Q. subs A. Q. A. with exam	Q. And if you could move the other one to where the end of that second profile is. A. I would say about here. Q. And do you believe that this demarcation between the baffle portions, the end of the first arcuate portion, is the where the claim tells you to put the end? A. Yes. Q. And then the next piece, is that elongated and substantially straight? A. No, it is not. Q. Does this fit the claims, Mr. Del Ponte? A. No, it does not. MR. COHN: Your Honor, I pass the witness. THE COURT: Mr. Van Just have a seat in the witness stand, sir. MR. VANDENBURGH: I would anticipate your examination lasting? MR. VANDENBURGH: Yes, Your Honor. THE COURT: All right. Ladies and gentlemen, the lawyers and I have some other matters that we need to take u and this is as good a time for us to take up those matters a

1 The other thing is -- so we're going break for the day 2 with the evidence, Mr. Cohn. Now, ladies and gentlemen, you have asked us a number of 3 questions as we've gone along, so I'm going to attempt to 4 answer some of those questions that haven't already been 5 6 answered. 7 The matter that is being tried to you today is tried to you because the parties have been unable to resolve their 8 9 differences about the issues including -- included in this 10 lawsuit. The actual negotiating process between the parties is 11 irrelevant to the issues before you. I have resolved some of 12 those differences. It is up to you to decide the remaining 13 issues of willfulness, infringement by mowers having the 14 redesigned front baffle, and damages relating to any 15 infringement. 16 You've also asked to see an Exmark deck. 17 The parties created their exhibit lists in preparation for 18 this trial some time ago. The parties are not generally 19 prepared to produce additional exhibits at this time because of 20 that. Some of your requests may be produced during the trial 21 and others may not. 22 So, ladies and gentlemen, with that, we will end for the 23 day. We'll see you tomorrow morning at nine o'clock. 24 Remember to keep an open mind because you haven't heard 25 all the evidence yet and to keep your own counsel and not

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 266 of 282 - Page ID # 23330

1 consult anybody or anything about the case. 2 We'll see you tomorrow morning at nine o'clock. (Jury out at 4:45 p.m.) 3 THE COURT: Sir, you may step down and have a seat in 4 5 the back if you'd like. THE WITNESS: Thank you, Your Honor. 6 7 THE COURT: We're outside the presence of the jury. 8 We finished Mr. Wenzel's testimony and as a result, 9 according to the agreement between the parties, technically the 10 plaintiff has rested; and once the plaintiff rests, then of 11 course defense counsel has some motions that need to be taken 12 up. And it's my understanding that we have an agreement that 13 we'll be -- that the defendant's counsel has some matters that 14 need to be taken up and we have an agreement that we can do it 15 basically at the end of today, and it's the end of today. 16 So is Mr. Wolf available for this or not? Is he the one 17 that was going to do it? 18 MR. COHN: I believe I'll be doing the argument, 19 Your Honor. 20 THE COURT: All right. I don't want to get anybody 21 in any kind of trouble. 22 MR. COHN: No, no, not at all. 23 THE COURT: All right. So do you have any motions, 24 Mr. Cohn? MR. COHN: Your Honor. We would like to move under 25

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 267 of 282 - Page ID # 23331

```
1
      Rule 50 for judgment as a matter of law on the three issues
 2
      pending.
 3
                THE COURT: All right.
                MR. COHN: And I can take them one at a time.
 4
 5
                THE COURT: If you would.
                MR. COHN:
 6
                           Sure.
 7
                THE COURT: So let's do one and then I'll ask -- I
 8
      assume -- who -- one of the lawyers for the plaintiff will
 9
      respond to each and then we'll just do them one at a time.
10
           All right. So you may proceed, Mr. Cohn.
11
                MR. COHN: Let me start with non-infringement of the
12
      design-around. And frankly, Your Honor, I would love to refer
13
      to Exhibit 32, if I may?
14
                THE COURT: Yes, you may.
15
                MR. COHN: Let me turn it and face you.
16
                THE COURT: Oh, I can see it fine.
17
                MR. COHN: Even from the -- all right.
18
           So I think what we saw and heard -- let me just take the
19
      podium. If I need to come up, I will.
20
           What we heard from all of the witnesses is that the
21
      claim language is paramount. This isn't about whether it
22
      performs better or worse; we have got to look at the claims.
23
      The claims all say a first arcuate portion. It has an end.
24
      A substantially straight portion has to extend from that end.
25
      Every witness told us what the word "end" means in the claim.
```

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 268 of 282 - Page ID # 23332

1 Remember, the first part of infringement is claim 2 interpretation and then we apply it. So Mr. Busboom said, when we -- when we looked at the 3 patent, when we looked at Figure 2, and he said that the end of 4 that curve was all the way at that bolt, if you remember. And 5 I wrote "end" on it. And then I marked a point back from that. 6 7 I said you wouldn't call that the end? And I said why not? Because that's not where the curve ends. 8 9 They could tell just by looking at it, that's not where 10 the curvature ended. 11 Dr. Strykowski did the exact same thing. The end is where 12 the curvature ends. And, Your Honor, it's in the transcript, and this was with 13 14 Dr. Strykowski, and I know this because I had impeaching 15 testimony in the deposition, that the end of that curve in the 16 patent was at that top point because that's where the curvature 17 ended. He used the word "because" in his testimony. 18 So if we simply take that language, that definition of the 19 "end" and, if I may, and we apply it, that standard to this 20 mower, everyone agrees that the curvature ends where 21 Mr. Del Ponte just placed the clothespin, which is the same 22 place which Mr. Busboom and Dr. Strykowski did when I said, 23 where does the curvature end? 24 And once you do that and you look at what extends from 25 that end, everyone agreed, it's not elongated and substantially

1 straight, it's just the second circle. All three of those 2 experts. So if Your Honor says the end has to be here because 3 everyone agreed that's the end of the curvature, then 4 non-infringement is -- is conceded at that point, if this is 5 the -- what the end is in the claim. 6 7 That's our first argument. 8 Our second argument on non-infringement -- I think I can 9 take these -- is that if you -- if you -- if you give 10 Mr. Busboom and Dr. Strykowski the benefit of the doubt and you 11 put the end somewhere to the trim side of where we say the end 12 is, which Doctor -- which Mr. Del Ponte says is arbitrary and 13 they admitted -- you saw Mr. Busboom, we were off by three or 14 four inches on these. It's arbitrary. But in any event, 15 that's what they say. They say you put it several inches away 16 from where the curvature ends. They call that the end. 17 And I -- and I know what they say about that. They say if 18 you look at this piece it's the -- it's the end of whatever 19 comes before it. But, Your Honor, that's just tautological. That just 20 21 proves what they're trying to -- or proves their conclusion. 22 It's not the end in the middle. I mean, you wouldn't say the 23 end of the game is at the end of the half. The end of the game 24 is at the end of the game. 25 But even if you give them this, okay, this piece here is

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 270 of 282 - Page ID # 23334

1 not elongated and substantially straight. It's made up of --2 of two curves of the same, okay? And I -- I think the -- that everyone admitted on that 3 issue. But even if you give them that too, if this is the end 4 and this is straight, you got another -- you've got an 5 identical piece. Remember, I held those pieces up there and 6 7 just colloquially it reminded me of Karate Kid where Mr. Miyaqi 8 said same but different. It was the two pieces are exactly the 9 same shape. And Mr. Busboom said this is straight and this is 10 arcuate. 11 And you can't have that, Your Honor, because that would ignore the claim language. You might as well have a first 12 13 arcuate portion, a second arcuate portion, and a third arcuate 14 portion in the claim and that would be no different than what 15 Mr. Busboom and Dr. Strykowski are trying to do. What happens is, if you agree with everything they say, 16 17 you get curved-straight-straight. You can't have that either. 18 We think the end argument is just -- I mean, they --19 everyone admitted the curvature ends there. They even used the 20 word "end." And everyone admitted that what comes next, that's 21 not substantially straight. 22 So for those three reasons, we would move for judgment as 23 a matter of law on non-infringement. 24 THE COURT: All right. And so who argues this end of 25 it?

#### 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 271 of 282 - Page ID # 23335

1 MR. VANDENBURGH: I'll do that, Your Honor. 2 THE COURT: All right. Now, Mr. Vandenburgh, let me just tell you where I am on this, okay? 3 Everybody agrees on the curve. The question is where the 4 5 curve ends, okay, on the first argument portion. I believe that it could be reasonably argued that the 6 curve on the first arcuate portion ends where the reverse curve 7 8 starts on the second arcuate portion that the plaintiffs have 9 put in place. 10 If you do that, then it's arguable that you have a 11 straight line from the first arcuate portion to the next segment of the -- of the next segment of the -- of the 12 13 structure. 14 The problem that I have is after the first elongated 15 portion. If I read the patent correctly, after the end of the 16 first -- at the end of the elongated portion begins the second 17 arcuate portion that follows the contour of the tip of the 18 blade. 19 And what your problem is, is that at the end of the 20 elongated portion it doesn't follow the arcuate tip of the 21 portion of the blade, there's another reverse angle that you've 22 got to worry about before you get to the circle that is the 23 arcuate portion of the blade. 24 So how do you get around that? 25 MR. VANDENBURGH: So if I understand what you're

## 8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 272 of 282 - Page ID # 23336

1	saying, you're comfortable with the idea that this could be a
2	first arcuate portion, this could be an elongated and
3	substantially straight portion. Your question is whether this
4	could be a second arcuate portion?
5	THE COURT: As as outlined in the patent.
6	What I'm saying to you is not as a matter of law, but
7	enough for the jury to decide.
8	MR. VANDENBURGH: Right.
9	THE COURT: The part that I'm having a problem with
10	as a matter of law is the last segment.
11	MR. VANDENBURGH: Right.
12	THE COURT: So I I want to hear your argument.
13	MR. VANDENBURGH: Okay. All right. A couple of
14	things, Your Honor.
15	One is the evidence from the witnesses is when you're
16	considering whether a baffle portion meets the limitations of
17	the claims, you need to look at it as a whole.
18	So you need to identify the portion and then you look for
19	the end.
20	So we start by saying I'm going to try to go basically
21	where it stops curving.
22	The question is, as a whole, is this arcuate?
23	Now, the other thing, Your Honor, is the word "arcuate" is
24	broader. The rear baffles are required to be semicircular,
25	which means that they have to have a single radius of

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 273 of 282 - Page ID # 23337

1	curvature. They have to follow the blade, according to the
2	claim language.
3	THE COURT: The first the first baffle?
4	MR. VANDENBURGH: The rear baffle. So I'm talking
5	the second baffle.
6	THE COURT: Okay. All right.
7	MR. VANDENBURGH: There's reference to a plurality
8	of
9	MR. WINKELS: Semicircular baffle.
10	MR. VANDENBURGH: semicircular baffle portions.
11	THE COURT: And that's the rear baffle.
12	MR. VANDENBURGH: That's the rear baffle. So these
13	needs to be circular. Not just curved, circular.
14	The term "arcuate" is broad. It just requires "curved."
15	And so you can have varying radiuses of curvature and
16	still have an arcuate portion. And, in fact, "arcuate" is
17	broad enough to cover a curve that at least some point goes in
18	two different directions.
19	THE COURT: All right. But here's the problem. If
20	you look at lines 28 or 27 of the of column 6, it
21	starts it talks about the ends, substantially straight ends,
22	extending from the second end of the first arcuate baffle
23	portion and a second arcuate baffle portion, having first and
24	second ends, which extends from the second end of the of
25	said first elongated and substantially straight baffle portion

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 274 of 282 - Page ID # 23338

1 partially around said second cutting blade. 2 So you're saying that -- so that's where I run into the problem --3 MR. VANDENBURGH: Right. So --4 THE COURT: There's a circle around the second 5 cutting blade, okay? And then there's an elongated portion but 6 7 it's the little tiny bit in between that's problematic. 8 MR. VANDENBURGH: That right there. 9 THE COURT: That's right. 10 MR. VANDENBURGH: Right. 11 THE COURT: And so how do you explain that? 12 MR. VANDENBURGH: So my explanation is, as a whole, from here to here, does this baffle portion extend partially 13 14 around this blade? And as a whole, it does that, even though 15 there may be an inch or two at one end that is not extending 16 around the blade. 17 And I will say, we've heard lots of arguments from the 18 defendants on this device. I'm not sure this is one we've ever 19 heard from them before. 20 THE COURT: Well, that's --21 MR. VANDENBURGH: That doesn't mean that Your Honor 22 can't --23 THE COURT: Can't think. But I'm just -- I'm just 24 talking to you --25 MR. VANDENBURGH: Yeah.

1 THE COURT: -- about what my --2 MR. VANDENBURGH: Right. THE COURT: -- where I'm coming from and that's the 3 only thing I'm concerned about as far as getting over the hump. 4 5 MR. VANDENBURGH: Yes. THE COURT: So right now all you've got to do is 6 7 worry about me no matter how stupid I am. 8 MR. VANDENBURGH: Exactly. So certainly my number 9 one point is, as a whole, this baffle portion is extending 10 partially around this blade even though there might be a small 11 inch or two section on the end --12 THE COURT: Yeah, but I can't tell where the end of 13 the elongated portion is and the beginning of the second 14 arcuate portion that traces the blade travel. 15 MR. VANDENBURGH: We are --16 THE COURT: You're saying that it's more than just a 17 point, it could be an inch or two. 18 MR. VANDENBURGH: It's very common in claim -- in 19 patent cases that you don't have just one way to read a claim 20 on an accused device. This idea of arbitrariness, you know, 21 they've come up with it, they're trying to convince the jury of 22 that, but the reality is that there are lots of times where you 23 look at a claim, you say, okay, is there a way to make this 24 claim language fit a product. 25 So the fact that, you know, we could move this one a

1	quarter of an inch or half an inch and this one as well isn't
2	really relevant. What's relevant at the end of the day is can
3	you set up a arrangement where you say, yes, this meets the
4	limitations of the claim? So we are doing exactly that. From
5	here to here, from here to here.
6	And again, whether we slip it a half an inch or an inch
7	one way or the other doesn't change the fact that there's
8	evidence this is elongated substantially straight.
9	Importantly, it performs a function of the elongated and
10	substantially straight.
11	THE COURT: Yeah, but the function is an "and," not
12	an "or." And so the function of the elongated straight it's
13	read together. The elongated straight has to perform a
14	function, so you read it together. And then and so I'm
15	saying that you're okay on the elongated and straight because
16	it performs the function. But I'm having a problem thereafter.
17	MR. VANDENBURGH: Yeah. Okay.
18	THE COURT: All right. So here's what I'm going to
19	do. I'm going to take this under advisement and I'll probably
20	take it under advisement until the jury gets the case. And if
21	they get hung up, somebody's going to read it and weep. I
22	don't know who yet but somebody will.
23	MR. COHN: Your Honor, can I just add a couple short
24	things on that?
25	THE COURT: Yes, you may.

```
1280
```

1	
1	MR. COHN: I know we're running out of time but I
2	think this is a very important point. I'm actually going to
3	start with the least important point very quickly and then talk
4	about the more important one.
5	You remember Mr. Busboom initially put the clothespin over
6	here and then we played around with exactly where it should go
7	and then he his report was over here. So you're talking
8	about a pretty wide swath of where they're
9	THE COURT: No, I understand
10	MR. COHN: This is clearly not around the second
11	blade. Your Honor's got it perfectly right.
12	THE COURT: Well, everybody tells me I have it
13	perfectly right when I'm on their side.
14	MR. COHN: Well, look, it's moving
15	THE COURT: But I understand exactly what you're
16	saying.
17	MR. COHN: It's moving straight away from the blade,
18	Your Honor.
19	THE COURT: No, I understand.
20	MR. COHN: Yeah.
21	THE COURT: But I'm not prepared at this juncture to
22	direct verdict. That's what I'm telling you.
23	MR. COHN: Okay.
24	THE COURT: And I'm prepared only to take it under
25	advisement for the time being.

1 MR. COHN: Sure. 2 THE COURT: You're going to renew this motion at the end of your case in chief. 3 MR. COHN: Yes, Your Honor. 4 THE COURT: And after I listen to your experts maybe 5 they'll push me over the edge, maybe they won't, and maybe I'll 6 7 wait to see whether you can convince the jury before I make a decision. 8 9 MR. COHN: Yes. 10 THE COURT: But right now I don't know that I have 11 enough to say yea or nay. I'd like to take it under 12 advisement. 13 MR. COHN: Sure. With the promise that my next two 14 arguments will be very short, I would like to make one more 15 point on this. 16 THE COURT: Go ahead. 17 MR. COHN: This notion of where the end is, I think 18 with respect to -- I think it would be a mistake to ask the 19 jury to figure that out because that's an issue of claim 20 construction for the Court and these issues come up at trial 21 sometimes. And I think the -- that Your Honor -- it is 22 Your Honor's role to determine the meaning of "end," that it's 23 not -- it's not anywhere they want, it has to be -- that means 24 something. And we think for the jury to be able to say, well, 25 the end can be here, what does that mean? That the end -- they

1 admitted, in the context of the patent, when we were looking at 2 the patent, the experts admitted that the end is where the curvature ends. 3 And if you simply instruct the jury, maybe -- maybe this 4 is the result of this, you can take that under advisement, if 5 the jury is instructed that the end means the end of the 6 7 curvature of the baffle, then I think -- I think 8 non-infringement has been admitted, under that 9 interpretation --10 THE COURT: Well --11 MR. COHN: -- which is, respectfully, I think for 12 Your Honor to decide. 13 THE COURT: Okay. Your -- see, the trouble is with 14 your whole design is that a reverse angle -- a reverse arc ends 15 up being at -- is straight at some distance because it goes in 16 one arc and then the arc reverses. And where it -- where the 17 confluence of those two arcs is creates a substantially 18 straight portion. 19 Now, whether it's elongated or not -- enough or not is 20 open for discussion. And that's why I'm not really concerned 21 about it. It's what comes after in the context of the claim 22 language that I'm concerned about. And counsel for the 23 plaintiff says that it's not one pinpoint in a -- in a 24 geometric term, it can be a little more than a pinpoint. 25 And I'm having some trouble conceptually with that, but I

8:10-cv-00187-JFB-TDT Doc # 615 Filed: 09/24/15 Page 280 of 282 - Page ID # 23344

1 would like to think about it some more and that's why I'm 2 taking it under advisement. 3 MR. COHN: I appreciate that. MR. VANDENBURGH: Your Honor, could I make one more 4 point I should have made while I was up there but --5 MR. COHN: It's my fault, Your Honor. 6 7 MR. VANDENBURGH: -- I was on the spot? 8 THE COURT: See, you can snatch victory. 9 But I would like to defer this until the close of 10 evidence, okay? And then we can talk it in -- about it in the 11 context -- a little bit more thoroughly than the time demands 12 that we have right now. 13 So I'd like you to hold onto that thought, 14 Mr. Vandenburgh, and we'll discuss it when we talk about 15 instructions and whether the matter goes to the jury. 16 All right. So Mr. Cohn, your next two arguments? 17 Indulge me for ten seconds, Your Honor. MR. COHN: 18 THE COURT: Well, one has to be on willfulness. 19 MR. COHN: Yes, one is on willfulness, that's right. 20 THE COURT: And I'm overruling that. I think you've 21 got enough facts here to go to the jury. 22 MR. COHN: Just for the record, one sentence. We 23 just want to reiterate the legal question that we asked the 24 Court to resolve in our summary judgment motion regarding the 25 objective prong and we would reiterate those arguments again

1 for purposes of the Rule 50 motion. 2 THE COURT: Well, I understand that and I'll take that under advisement as well. I think that the way the jury 3 instruction is cast right now, the jury is not advised that --4 5 that I've made a decision on any prong. We've just asked them to make a decision on a subjective prong. So operationally 6 7 we're at the same point we would otherwise be. 8 MR. COHN: Okay. And just so the record is clear for 9 appeal, I am asking for judgment as a matter of law on the 10 subjective prong as well. 11 THE COURT: And I'm overruling the subjective prong. 12 MR. COHN: Thank you, Your Honor. And then lastly, 13 Your Honor --14 THE COURT: Damages? 15 MR. COHN: Damages. We reiterate the arguments that 16 we set forth in our motion, our Daubert motion with respect to 17 Miss Bennis, which I think articulated why we believe the 18 damages analysis was legally insufficient. And we would move 19 for a judgment as a matter of law on those bases. 20 THE COURT: All right. And I've written -- I think 21 my opinion on this issue is still sound. I think there's a 22 fact question about which measure of damages is appropriate 23 with respect to the hypothetical negotiation. So your motion's 24 overruled. 25 MR. COHN: Okay.

1 THE COURT: Anything else, Mr. Cohn? 2 MR. COHN: Not at the moment, Your Honor, no. 3 THE COURT: Okay. Anything else, Mr. Vandenburgh? MR. VANDENBURGH: No, Your Honor. 4 5 THE COURT: Okay. We'll see you at nine o'clock 6 tomorrow morning. And let's go off the record. 7 (Discussion was had off the record.) 8 (Evening recess was taken at 5:07 p.m.) 9 \* \* 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 CERTIFICATION 20 I, Susan M. DeVetter, RDR, CRR, certify that the foregoing 21 is a correct transcript from the record of proceedings in the 22 above-entitled matter. 23 24 /s/ Susan M. DeVetter September 15, 2015 Official Court Reporter Date 25